

APPENDIX II

TAB I

Page 1

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE MIDDLE DISTRICT OF PENNSYLVANIA

TAMMY J. KITZMILLER; BRYAN)
REHM; DEBORAH F. FENTIMORE;) CIVIL ACTION
JOEL A. LIEB; STEVEN STOUGH;) No. 4:04 CV-2688
BETH A. EVELAND; CYNTHIA)
SNEATH; JULIE SMITH; ARALENE)
D. CALLAHAN ("BARRIE");)
FREDERICK B. CALLAHAN,)
)
Plaintiffs,)
)
vs.)
DOVER AREA SCHOOL DISTRICT;)
DOVER AREA SCHOOL DISTRICT)
BOARD OF DIRECTORS,)
)
Defendants.)

DEPOSITION OF SCOTT MINNICH, Ph.D.

TAKEN ON BEHALF OF THE PLAINTIFFS

AT MOSCOW, IDAHO

MAY 26, 2005, AT 8:45 A.M.

REPORTED BY:

NEIL COOLEY, C.S.R.
Notary Public

	Page 2	Page 4
1	APPEARANCES	
2		
3	3 MR. ALEX J. LUCHENITSER, Attorney at Law, Senior	1 13 Discovery Calls Dover Evolution
4	4 Litigation Counsel, Americans United for Separation	Policy Misguided . . . 232
5	5 of Church and State, 518 C Street, NE, Washington,	2 14 Dover Area School District News:
6	6 D.C. 20002, appearing for and on behalf of the	3 Biology Curriculum Update 236
7	7 Plaintiffs.	4 15 Intelligent Design. Johnson, Jebe,
8		Pearcey, Dembski and others . . . 238
9	9 MR. EDWARD L. WHITE, III, Attorney at Law, of the	5 16 William A. Dembski: Intelligent
10	10 Thomas More Law Center, 24 Frank Lloyd Wright Drive,	6 Design, the Bridge Between Science
11	11 P.O. Box 393, Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106, appearing	7 & Theology 241
12	12 for and on behalf of the Defendants.	8 17 Mitochondrial Evolution. Gray,
13		9 Burger, Lang 239
14	14 ALSO ATTENDING:	9 18 The Origin of New Genes: Gilbran
15	15 Nicholas J. Matske, Public Information Project	From the Young and Old. Lang,
16	16 Specialist	10 Betman, Thornton, Wang 260
17		11 19 Physics Today (on the web):
18		Feature Article: Molecule Behavior
19		12 20 "The efficiency of propulsion by a
20		rotating flagellum," by Purcell 274
21		13 21 Journal of Molecular Evolution:
22		14 Rates of DNA Sequence Evolution
23		in Experimental Populations of
24		15 Escherichia coli During 20,000
25		16 Generations by Leaski, Wickworth,
		17 Riley 285
	Page 3	Page 5
3	INDEX	
4	TESTIMONY OF SCOTT MINNICH, Ph.D.: PAGE	1 THE DEPOSITION OF SCOTT MINNICH, Ph.D.,
5	Examination by Mr. Luchenitser 4	2 was taken on behalf of the Plaintiffs on this, the
6	DEPOSITION EXHIBITS: MARKED	3 26th day of May 2005, at University of Idaho, Life
7	1 Discourse of Expert Testimony,	4 Sciences Building, Room 144, Moscow, Idaho, before
8	Scott Minnich, Ph.D. 7	5 M & M Court Reporting Service, Inc., by Neil Cooley,
9	2 Campus Crusade for Christ 122	6 Court Reporter and Notary Public within and for the
10	3 Men's Retreat: Evangelical Free	7 State of Idaho, to be used in an action pending in
11	Church of Pillar 126	8 the United States District Court for the Middle
12	4 Science and Christianity in	9 District of Pennsylvania, said cause being Civil
13	Courtship. Dr. Jed C. Macosko 131	10 Action No. 4:04-CV-2688 in said court.
14	5 The Veritas Forum: From the Big	11 THEREUPON, the following proceedings were
15	Bang to Biology 133	12 adduced, to wit:
16	6 Origins of the 2,4-Dinotrophenol	13 SCOTT MINNICH, Ph.D.,
17	Pathway. Johnson, Jain, Spain 153	14 a witness having been first duly sworn to tell the
18	7 Sequences of the somatic recombination	15 truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth,
19	sites of immunoglobulin light-chain	16 relating to said cause, deposes and says:
20	genes 158	17 EXAMINATION
21	8 How Bacteria Assemble Flagella 177	18 QUESTIONS BY MR. LUCHENITSER:
22	9 The TolQ-TolR proteins energize TolA	19 Q. Dr. Minnich, could you please state your
23	and share homologies with the flagellar	20 name for the record?
24	motor proteins MotA-MotB 181	21 A. Scott Arthur Minnich.
25	10 Conformational Change in the Stator of	22 Q. And have you had your deposition taken
	the Bacterial Flagellar Motor 182	23 before?
	11 Genetic analysis of coordinate flagellar	24 A. Never.
	and type III regulatory circuits in	25 Q. I'm just going to give you some standard
	pathogenic bacteria. Minnich and	
	Meyer 222	
	12 The Wedge, Center for the Renewal	
	of Science & Culture, Discovery	
	Institute 231	

2 (Pages 2 to 5)

Page 6	Page 8
1 instructions. Please answer all the questions 2 orally. Please don't nod your head or say uh-huh or 3 huh-uh, because then the court reporter won't be 4 able to take down your answer accurately. 5 If you do not hear a question or don't 6 understand a question, please tell me. Please wait 7 until I have finished asking my question before you 8 begin your answer. And if you realize that an 9 earlier answer you gave was inaccurate or 10 incomplete, please say that you would like to 11 correct a former answer and I will give an 12 opportunity to do so. 13 And if your attorney objects to one of my 14 questions, you are still required to answer the 15 question unless your attorney instructs you not to 16 answer. 17 And do you understand the instructions I 18 have given you?	1 A. No. 2 Q. And can you tell me what the principal 3 opinions you have in this case are? 4 A. That intelligent design is a viable 5 scientific theory. 6 Q. Anything else? 7 A. No, I mean in terms of my expertise in 8 this case, you know, it is whether or not 9 intelligent design is a competing theory in part to 10 the current consensus in biology. 11 Q. When you say intelligent design is a 12 viable scientific theory, can you explain what you 13 mean by viable? 14 A. In other words, it is looking at the 15 public evidence and interpreting that evidence in 16 the sense that the design we see in nature is real 17 design, not just apparent design, which most of my 18 colleagues hold the latter view. 19 Q. Uh-huh, so when you use the word viable, 20 do you mean it is real? 21 A. It's real, it's real, okay? It is 22 science, it is not a religious position. It has 23 metaphysical implications like evolution does, but 24 that is incidental, secondary to its explanatory 25 power when we look at the facts and experiences that
19 A. I do.	
20 Q. And do you understand that you under oath 21 and are required to tell the truth?	
22 Q. I do.	
23 Q. Is it correct that you are serving as an 24 expert for the defendants in this case?	
25 A. Yes.	

Page 7	Page 9
1 Q. Let me pull out your expert report, and 2 we are going to mark that as Exhibit 1. 3 (Deposition Exhibit No. 1 marked for 4 identification.) 5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 6 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 1 the expert 7 report of Scott Minnich. And if you could flip to 8 Exhibit A to Exhibit 1, which is the biographical 9 sketch in the back, please, does that Exhibit A 10 correctly reflect your educational and employment 11 history? 12 A. It does. 13 Q. And is everything in there still correct 14 or current or has something changed since you 15 submitted it? 16 A. No, it is still current. 17 Q. What were you asked to give an opinion 18 about by the defendants in this case? 19 A. The theory of intelligent design and how 20 it fits into this case in Dover, Pennsylvania. 21 (Off the record.) 22 MR. LUCHENITSER: Back on the record. 23 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 24 Q. Were you asked to give an opinion about 25 anything else?	1 we see in the natural world. 2 Q. What are the metaphysical implications 3 that intelligent design has? 4 A. That there is design behind it, that 5 there is an intelligence in part responsible for 6 what we see. 7 Q. And let me ask you, why do you use the 8 word metaphysical? 9 A. Well, it is philosophical, metaphysical. 10 I mean, in that realm it doesn't require a religious 11 position, you know? It can be more of -- a person 12 can hold the view of intelligent design as being 13 real and believe in the God of Espinoza or Einstein, 14 the God of the philosophers, not of a traditional 15 God that we think of in the context of traditional 16 religions. 17 Q. Does your report identify all the subject 18 matter that you are going to testify about at trial? 19 MR. WHITE: I have to object because I 20 couldn't hear you. 21 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 22 Q. I'm sorry, does your expert report 23 identify all the subject matter that you will 24 testify about at trial? 25 A. That's an absolute statement, and being a

3 (Pages 6 to 9)

Page 10	Page 12
1 scientist I always hesitate. But this is – in 2 terms of my own research and training, it is 3 reflected in this report.	1 between Monsanto and some other company in terms of 2 who had the right to that gene.
4 Q. Do you intend to express any opinions in 5 this case that have not been included in your 6 report?	3 Q. Would you consider yourself an expert in 4 evolutionary biology?
7 A. If I am asked a question that is not 8 directly applicable to this report, I may choose to 9 respond or not if I have knowledge in the area. No, 10 this isn't a complete tome of all the knowledge that 11 I have.	5 A. That's a difficult question and I want to 6 qualify it, because I was challenged here at the 7 University of Idaho several years ago when Robert 8 Pennock came and gave a seminar. And he knew my 9 position and he challenged me in the audience with 10 respect to, "How can you, as a practicing 11 contributing scientist, hold the position that is 12 contrary to the very foundation of your discipline?" 13 Okay? This is in front of all of my colleagues and 14 students in a formal departmental seminar.
12 Q. Do you have any plans to supplement your 13 report in any way?	15 And I responded that, "That's an 16 interesting question, and now that you have raised 17 it, I'm sure a lot of people are interested in my 18 response."
14 A. No, not at present.	19 What I find interesting in my own 20 experience, and that of colleagues in this 21 department -- and we are the most highly funded and 22 I think the most successful in getting extramural 23 funding, publication in peer-reviewed journals. We 24 have several new faculty so I don't want to make an 25 absolute statement, but, you know, the past couple

Page 11	Page 13
2 organisms that cause disease.	1 of years -- but at that time nobody in this
3 Q. Has that area been the focus of your 4 professional research?	2 department, as a student or post-doc, had taken, 3 except for one person, a formal course in evolution. 4 None of them, except for one person, had read 5 Darwin's book.
4 A. Yes.	6 So when you say an expert on evolution, 7 you know, we are all biologists and we are all 8 contributing biologists, but in our training we have 9 not been required to study formally evolution as a 10 subject.
5 MR. WHITE: Object as far as what time 6 frame you are talking about for his professional 7 research.	11 So I would say I am not, per se, an 12 expert. I know a lot about it. I think I 13 understand it clearly. But in terms of, you know, 14 looking at my transcripts through graduate school, 15 undergraduate school, post-doctoral training at 16 Purdue and Princeton, you will find no evidence that 17 I took a course in evolution.
8 THE WITNESS: Yes, currently. I have had 9 other experiences, too. I have been in diagnostics, 10 I have been in developmental biology, and -- I'm 11 trying to think in terms of just how you quoted 12 this, basic molecular biology, molecular genetics.	18 In fact, when I wanted to as a graduate 19 student my mentor dissuaded me from doing it. He 20 said pretty derogatory things about it.
13 As an example, the controversy about 14 genetically engineered foods and BT toxins. I don't 15 know whether you are familiar with this at all, 16 bacillus thuringiensis toxin. This has been 17 incorporated into agricultural plants and has been 18 controversial because of the ethical concerns about 19 introducing or modifying plant genomes.	21 Q. So you have never actually taken a course 22 in evolution?
20 But that bacillus toxin gene I cloned as 21 a post-doc, and we gave it to Monsanto 20 years ago.	23 A. And that's the common experience for most 24 of my colleagues throughout my career.
22 So occasionally I am called to -- in 23 fact, four or five years ago I had my research 24 notebooks subpoenaed because of a patent lawsuit 25 involved in who owned the rights to that. That was	25 Q. Right, and that's your experience. I was

4 (Pages 10 to 13)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 14</p> <p>1 just trying to make a point that that's your 2 experience. 3 A. Right. Right. 4 Q. So you would not hold yourself out as an 5 expert on evolution? 6 A. I think I can hold my own, I think I can 7 hold my own in terms of this debate. I have done a 8 lot of reading on my own, but how do you measure who 9 is an expert? 10 If you look at publications, 11 contributions that are formal in that discipline, 12 no, you are not going to find them on my resume. 13 Q. So have you had any training in 14 evolution, other than just reading stuff on your 15 own? 16 A. I think in the informal discussions and 17 debates at meetings when these topics come up, I am 18 very interested in the subject and will participate. 19 Q. What have you read about evolution? 20 A. Well, I mean, I have read Darwin, you 21 know? I have read Dennett, I have read Dawkins, I 22 have read a number of books, perused the journals, 23 any journals that touch on evolution, infectious 24 disease, I pay attention to them. 25 Q. Have you ever taught any courses in</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 16</p> <p>1 colleagues, is that accurate? 2 MR. WHITE: Objection as to what you mean 3 by formal training. 4 THE WITNESS: I haven't had a formal 5 designated course in evolutionary biology. Now, it 6 has been a component of courses that I took as an 7 undergraduate, general biology. There would be a 8 section on evolution that dealt with mutation and 9 natural selection, Haeckel's embryos, peppered moss, 10 the standard fare back in the 70s, but it was pretty 11 shallow. 12 Q. That was as an undergraduate? 13 A. Right. 14 Q. Have you done any research in the field 15 of evolutionary biology? 16 A. I have dabbled in it in terms of 17 antibiotic resistance, which is in my expert report, 18 it's an interesting one. 19 Q. Can you explain what you mean by dabbled 20 in it? 21 A. In other words, we have done a series of 22 experiments, we haven't published them yet just 23 because at the time we were doing them, there were 24 other groups that were doing it as well, and they 25 published much of the same information that we had.</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 15</p> <p>1 evolution? 2 A. No. 3 Q. And is it correct -- you might have said 4 this already, is it correct that your department at 5 the University of Idaho does not offer a course in 6 evolution? 7 A. Our department does not. Biology does, 8 and this is another thing that I found interesting, 9 is that -- to clarify the statement, in talking 10 about Pennock, that our department does not require 11 nor does it offer evolution even as an elective. 12 And at the time period when Pennock was here, 13 biology offered a course in evolution, but it was a 14 400 level course. 15 Now they have since changed that, I think 16 in part to my criticism. But if it is so necessary 17 to have a firm understanding of evolution to do 18 biology, why do you offer it as a 400 level course? 19 So now that has been brought down into the 100 20 level. 21 Q. Just to clarify the record, is it 22 correct, Doctor, I want my understanding to be 23 correct, you have not had formal training in 24 evolution and your knowledge of evolution is 25 based just on reading articles and discussions with</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 17</p> <p>1 And it wasn't a focused -- the primary focus of my 2 own work, so, you know, I just kind of let it slide, 3 although I think we have got some interesting 4 contributions to make. When I get time I will go 5 back. 6 Q. What was the purpose of the research you 7 were doing on the antibiotic resistances? 8 A. I was interested in the general 9 ramifications, because if you look at the 10 conversations in this area in terms of evidence for 11 evolution, antibiotic resistance is a very common 12 component to those arguments, whether you see it in 13 National Geographic last November, you know? I 14 mean, this is part of the overwhelming evidence. 15 And I was interested in terms of what the 16 fitness costs are associated with antibiotic 17 resistance and does it really fall into the series 18 of observations where you have mutations that are 19 contributing to the long term what I call 20 complexifying mutations that are driving evolution 21 from simple to complex systems. 22 Q. Have you published any articles in the 23 field of evolutionary biology? 24 A. No, I have -- I think some of my work has 25 implications in terms of evolution. But not</p>

5 (Pages 14 to 17)

Page 18	Page 20
<p>1 formally, that's not my area of interest or, you 2 know, primary research.</p> <p>3 Q. Would you hold yourself out as an expert 4 in paleontology?</p> <p>5 A. No.</p> <p>6 Q. Do you have any training in the field of 7 paleontology?</p> <p>8 A. No.</p> <p>9 Q. Would you hold yourself out as an expert 10 in the field of systematics or taxonomy?</p> <p>11 A. I have experience in that.</p> <p>12 Microbiologists are taxonomic. You know, the 13 systematic bible is Burgy's Manual of Determinative 14 Bacteriology. And I took a course in systematics as 15 a graduate student from the editor of Burgy's 16 Manual, so I am familiar with systematics.</p> <p>17 Q. The course you took, or the training you 18 took in systematics, did it relate only to 19 systematics at the microbiology level --</p> <p>20 A. Right.</p> <p>21 Q. -- or did it relate to -- did it cover 22 systematics at the organismal level?</p> <p>23 A. No, I mean it was a microbiology course.</p> <p>24 Q. Do you have any training in systematics 25 or taxonomy at the organismal level?</p>	<p>1 Q. Was that also as an undergraduate?</p> <p>2 A. Undergraduate or early graduate student.</p> <p>3 Q. Do you have any training in the fields of 4 information theory or probability theory or 5 statistics?</p> <p>6 A. General statistics I have had courses in, 7 but I am not a statistician.</p> <p>8 Q. So you would not hold yourself out as an 9 expert in any of those areas?</p> <p>10 A. No, if I need to use statistics, I make 11 sure that I hook up with a statistician and go over 12 our data and make sure our interpretations are not 13 -- you know, are valid.</p> <p>14 Q. Do you have any expertise or training in 15 the field of gene sequence comparison?</p> <p>16 A. Yes, I do that routinely.</p> <p>17 Q. Do you have any expertise or training in 18 the field of genetic engineering?</p> <p>19 A. Yes. Yes, I mean, I publish in this 20 area, I use it all the time in my own research.</p> <p>21 Q. Have you actually engineered any life 22 forms?</p> <p>23 A. Yes, like I said, as a post-doc we cloned 24 bacillus thuringiensis toxin and that was handed 25 over to Monsanto, and they incorporated that into</p>
Page 19	Page 21
<p>1 A. I mean, I have had experience as an 2 undergraduate and graduate student taking 3 systematics courses or having it as a component of 4 my training, how you go through a systematic key and 5 look at phenotypes, or now as we employ genotypes, 6 and look at associations in terms of relatedness.</p> <p>7 Q. Is it correct you would not hold yourself 8 out as a expert in systematics or taxonomy?</p> <p>9 A. No, that's not my field.</p> <p>10 Q. Would you hold yourself out as an expert 11 in biology at the organismal level as opposed to the 12 molecular level?</p> <p>13 A. Again, I am a prokaryotic molecular 14 biologist, so I deal with haploid organisms and 15 that's my focus. I'm not an expert in terms of 16 mammalian zoology or taxonomy, if that's what you 17 are asking.</p> <p>18 Q. And have you had any training in biology 19 at the organismal level?</p> <p>20 A. In terms of course work, yes, I have. I 21 mean, I have taken microbiology courses that are a 22 pretty broad group of organisms. And I have taken 23 courses in zoology and vertebrate zoology, but that 24 was years ago and things have changed dramatically 25 in terms of that.</p>	<p>1 soy beans and into corn and other plants. So in 2 terms of the forefront of genetic engineering, that 3 was one the first major applications.</p> <p>4 I have modified organisms routinely. We 5 use site-directed mutagenesis, making fusion 6 proteins for analysis of gene regulation, deletions, 7 insertion of new information. That's our bread and 8 butter.</p> <p>9 Q. Do you have any expertise or training in 10 the fields of astrophysics, astronomy?</p> <p>11 A. No.</p> <p>12 Q. Cosmology?</p> <p>13 A. No.</p> <p>14 Q. Astrobiology?</p> <p>15 A. No.</p> <p>16 Q. Would you consider yourself as an expert 17 in the field of intelligent design theory?</p> <p>18 A. I am a contributor and I know the 19 literature pretty well and the people involved, so 20 it is a young, young field. But, yes, I mean in 21 part that's why I am here.</p> <p>22 Q. What sort of training have you had in 23 this field?</p> <p>24 A. I am a trained molecular biologist, so in 25 terms of scientific expertise, you know, I think a</p>

6 (Pages 18 to 21)

Page 22	Page 24
<p>2 lot of us recognize that advances in science aren't 2 so much generating new data, new information, but it 3 is looking at old information in new ways. In part 4 this is the contribution of intelligent design. 5 Q. Have you ever taught any courses in 6 intelligent design theory? 7 A. No. 8 Q. What sort of research have you done in 9 the field of intelligent design theory? 10 A. Again, that's a -- to me that's a loaded 11 question. I look at -- much of what I have done and 12 published is having implications in design theory. 13 You know, dissecting the macromolecular machinery of 14 the bacterial flagellum and looking at its genetic 15 programming, I think that has great implication in 16 terms of design theory, intelligent design in terms 17 of how we look at these things. 18 But in terms of formal presentation? I 19 have one publication that was in a meeting where I 20 designed the nature -- 21 Q. The 2004 article with Mr. Meyer? 22 A. Right. 23 Q. With respect to the research that you 24 were discussing that relates to intelligent design 25 theory, was the primary purpose of any of that</p>	<p>1 Q. So is it correct that the research you 2 have done, with respect to all the research that you 3 have done as it touches on intelligent design 4 theory, the purpose of that research was something 5 else, it wasn't -- 6 A. Yes, it's an understanding in terms of 7 basic biology, how does this system work? What are 8 the components? Who are the players in this game? 9 How are the genes regulated? How is it assembled, 10 how is it synthesized, the controlling elements? 11 So, yes, you have a pretty sophisticated 12 engine and it is the greatest fun in the world. It 13 is like being a 17-year-old kid in a garage with a 14 car and you can take it apart and put it back 15 together, modify it, see how it works. It is part 16 of the discovery process. 17 Q. Can you tell me what intelligent design 18 is? 19 A. Intelligent design, you know, in the 20 simplest sense, is asking the question: The design 21 that we see in natural systems that all biologists 22 agree is there, okay, from Dawkins to Francis Crick, 23 et cetera, you know, is the design real or is it 24 merely apparent? It's a simple question, there are 25 two answers to it. Both of them are valid questions</p>
Page 23	Page 25
<p>2 research to somehow advance intelligent design 3 theory? 4 A. No, no, I think it is implicit in the 5 work. You know, this is one thing I would emphasize 6 in terms of how science works. Forty years ago, 30 7 years ago we didn't know about macromolecular 8 machines. We assumed, as I mentioned in my expert 9 report, the article by Bruce Alberts when he was a 10 graduate student in the sixties, they looked at the 11 cell as essentially a bag of enzymes which are ... 12 colliding on second-order kinetics, okay? A pretty 13 primitive view of the cell. Now we see it as a 14 consortium of macromolecular machines that weren't 15 anticipated. 16 And so when I look at bacterial 17 flagellum, it is -- Howard Berg, at Harvard, has 18 referred to it as the most efficient machine in the 19 universe. That's a pretty astounding statement in 20 terms of something that on one side we hold as a 21 product of, you know, unpurposeful, unintelligent 22 cause. 23 So I think it is imperative, now that we 24 have all this new understanding, to go back and ask 25 is natural law efficient to produce sophistication of the systems that we are studying.</p>	<p>1 that should be explored and both of them are going 2 to have extremely interesting ramifications, okay? 3 So intelligent design is looking at 4 nature and saying, is our current understanding of 5 mutation, natural selection, time and chance, 6 sufficient to produce the systems that we are 7 studying, or are there other interpretations? Is 8 there an intelligence behind it? 9 Q. And would you define intelligent design 10 theory in the same way or would you give intelligent 11 design theory a different definition? 12 A. No, it is all, you know, focused in the 13 same goals. I mean, in part it encompasses -- it's 14 a new area. How do you measure, how do you detect 15 design, how do you quantify it? And that would be 16 outside of my expertise, per se, but there are 17 people that are working on those questions. 18 If you look at something, you know, if 19 you are an anthropologist and you pick up a bunch of 20 rocks and one of them is a piece of flint and has 21 certain patterns that by experience we know is 22 because of intelligence, how do we know that? I 23 mean, we intuitively can look and say, "Okay, this 24 is an arrowhead," but how do we quantify that in 25 terms of real scientific methodology? This has been</p>

7 (Pages 22 to 25)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 26</p> <p>1 Bill Dembski's contribution, probability, 2 specificity, how that fits into real analysis. 3 Q. Is intelligent design theory only -- is 4 it anything more than a field of study that attempts 5 to determine whether design in nature is caused by 6 an intelligent actor, or does it actually -- is it 7 actually a theory that affirmatively claims that an 8 intelligent actor did in fact design living 9 beings? MR. WHITE: Objection, it's a 10 confusing question.</p> <p>11 THE WITNESS: Yes, go back and rephrase 12 it because I want to understand.</p> <p>13 MR. WHITE: One thing, so I understand, 14 were you separating intelligent design from 15 intelligent design theory or is it the same when you 16 are asking these questions?</p> <p>17 MR. LUCHENITSER: Well, it seems Dr. 18 Minnich is not separating the two, so --</p> <p>19 MR. WHITE: I just want to know, when you 20 are asking the questions, so if you can rephrase 21 this question -- sorry.</p> <p>22 MR. LUCHENITSER: Okay, let me try to 23 make the question less confusing.</p> <p>24 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>25 Q. There are two possible ways that someone</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 28</p> <p>1 MR. WHITE: Let me object if you are 2 confused. Can you break it into two questions? 3 Because it seems like you have a couple of questions 4 mixed in there.</p> <p>5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>6 Q. Let me try to summarize it. Is it a 7 theory of detecting design in living systems or is 8 it a theory of what actually has happened as far as 9 whether systems were designed or not?</p> <p>10 MR. WHITE: Object, compound.</p> <p>11 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>12 Q. I think you are probably getting it. 13 A. I think it encompasses both. I mean, 14 it's a theory involved in detecting design, what are 15 the hallmarks of design, there is a component of 16 complexity and specification, pattern formation that 17 outside of this data we can recognize things in our 18 own experience that have design, and if we find them 19 in nature, we infer that they are designed as well, 20 okay?</p> <p>21 Does it claim there is a designer, is 22 that what you are asking?</p> <p>23 Q. Yes.</p> <p>24 A. It assumes that at this point, I mean, 25 that's an area that I think is difficult to</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 27</p> <p>1 can understand what intelligent design theory is. 2 The first way would be that it is just a field of 3 study that attempts to determine whether an 4 intelligent actor was responsible for the creation 5 of a living organism or development, or, two, that 6 it is in fact a scientific theory that actually in 7 fact claims that an intelligent actor was in fact 8 responsible for the design of living systems or 9 beings, which one is it?</p> <p>10 MR. WHITE: Same objection.</p> <p>11 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>12 Q. Was that clear?</p> <p>13 A. Not really. Are you asking me, is it a 14 theory or is it a law in the minds of the people 15 that are carrying out --</p> <p>16 Q. I am just trying to ask you, is it 17 anything more than a field of study that hasn't 18 reached any conclusions as to whether an intelligent 19 actor is responsible for living systems or is it an 20 actual scientific theory that in fact claims that an 21 intelligent actor is responsible for the design of 22 living systems?</p> <p>23 A. I'm still a little bit confused on the 24 distinction that you are trying to draw. I think it 25 is taking --</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 29</p> <p>1 pinpoint. Can I go to nature and say, you know, 2 this was directly designed and this has been 3 modified by natural laws of mutation and natural 4 selection? No, I don't know at what point design is 5 incorporated into the systems that we are looking 6 at.</p> <p>7 It is a new theory. I want to put it in 8 that context. It is not meant to supplant our 9 current ideas of evolution, I think it is going to 10 compliment it. And this is often the case in the 11 history of science where you have two competing 12 ideas and over time you find that there are truths 13 or components in both, okay?</p> <p>14 My opinion from my experience is that 15 natural selection, natural laws of chemistry and 16 physics, time, are insufficient to explain both the 17 complexity and the specification that we see in 18 biological systems.</p> <p>19 Q. Okay, on page one of your report you 20 said, "Intelligent design theory is a scientific 21 theory and it holds that the deep complexity and 22 clearly evident design in organisms is the result of 23 an intelligent agent."</p> <p>24 MR. WHITE: Where are you?</p> <p>25 MR. LUCHENITSER: That's the first</p>

8 (Pages 26 to 29)

Page 30	Page 32
1 sentence on page one after the big bold-headed one. 2 THE WITNESS: Right. Right. 3 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 4 Q. And is that your understanding of what 5 intelligent design theory is? 6 A. That's my statement in terms of my -- 7 Q. So that's your personal opinion? 8 A. Yes. 9 MR. WHITE: Objection, when you say 10 personal opinion, you are talking about as a 11 scientist, as an expert? 12 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 13 Q. Your personal scientific opinion? 14 A. Right. 15 Q. Is that definition of intelligent design 16 generally understood to be the correct definition 17 among scientists that are studying and advocating 18 for intelligent design? 19 A. In a broad sense, yes. 20 Q. And can you tell me why you said in a 21 broad sense? Is there some sense in it which it is 22 not agreed upon? 23 A. In terms of just asking, all right, in a 24 thumbnail sketch, what intelligent design is, the 25 theory is it is saying essentially this, that the	1 Balinski has stated that he favors intelligent 2 design because -- I don't want to put words in his 3 mouth, but my understanding of his position, and I 4 could be clarified, he agrees that there is real 5 design but he is agnostic in terms of where that 6 design is coming from, okay? In other words, it's a 7 viable compliment to our current consensus position, 8 it appears to be something more than just natural 9 law at work. 10 Q. So is the conclusion that there is a 11 designer, is that an integral component of 12 intelligent design theory? 13 A. No, not necessarily, not necessarily. 14 You know, designer has a broad interpretation as 15 well. 16 Q. So is it the case that somebody can be a 17 scientist in the field of intelligent design but can 18 conclude there is no designer or that it is unclear 19 whether there is a designer? 20 A. Are you asking are there scientists that 21 believe there is no designer? 22 Q. Scientists that are in the field of 23 intelligent design theory. 24 A. No. 25 Q. Are there any alternative definitions of
Page 31	Page 33
1 deep complexity, that apparent design is real 2 design, is a product of an intelligent agent. 3 Q. Are there persons in the field of 4 intelligent design who have not reached the 5 conclusion that an intelligent designer is 6 responsible for the deep complexity and clearly 7 into, if you will, the deep complexity in organisms 8 and are not sure about that matter? 9 MR. WHITE: Objection, confusing 10 question. Did you understand the question? 11 THE WITNESS: Not -- I mean, what is the 12 alternative? I mean, if something is designed and 13 you hold that it is real design, then I think by 14 definition there is an intelligence behind it. 15 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 16 Q. Let me try to re-ask the question. You 17 have concluded that there is a designer; is that 18 correct? 19 A. Correct. 20 Q. Are there persons in the field of 21 intelligent design who have not reached the 22 conclusion as to whether or not there is a designer 23 but are uncertain about that? 24 A. There are people that are to a degree, I 25 think, agnostic in terms of that. I mean, David	1 intelligent design that are different from the 2 definition you gave in your report? 3 A. I think my written statement is 4 consistent with my colleagues in terms of -- you 5 know, I think there are philosophers of science in 6 the intelligence design arena that are more 7 articulate in terms of the philosophical 8 implications of this. 9 Q. How would you define creationism? 10 A. Creationism, which I think is very 11 different than intelligent design, uses biblical 12 reference by which you judge science. In the 13 traditional sense, scientific creationism held to a 14 literal interpretation of Genesis and thought that 15 that was an embodiment of truth and that science 16 should be filtered through that viewpoint. 17 I disagree with that stand. In fact, I 18 was never an active participant in scientific 19 creationism as it went through the Louisiana and 20 Arkansas debates, I thought it was out of balance. 21 Q. Is there a difference between creation 22 science and creationism? 23 A. Well, in terms of definitions, yes, I 24 think it is subtle. Creationism, again I think in 25 the traditional sense as it is used in the public

9 (Pages 30 to 33)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 34</p> <p>1 arena, implies a literal interpretation of Genesis. 2 Scientific creationism then tries to look at the 3 body of scientific understanding and fit it 4 consistently with that viewpoint of biblical 5 interpretation.</p> <p>6 Q. Is teaching of creationism or creation science -- is the teaching of that, that forms of life began abruptly -- begin abruptly in their basic types, for example, fish with fins and scales, birds with feathers and beaks and wings?</p> <p>11 A. That's -- repeat the question because I want to make sure I understand it.</p> <p>13 Q. Does creationism or creation science teach that forms of life began abruptly in their basic types? For example, fish began with fins and scales and birds began with feathers, beaks and wings?</p> <p>18 A. That is my understanding, yes.</p> <p>19 Q. What is the difference between intelligent design theory and creation science?</p> <p>21 A. Intelligent design theory isn't dependent upon any formal religious writing or revelation in which you are trying to match the natural world to show consistency. It is simply looking at the science and asking the question: Is the design that</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 36</p> <p>1 Q. You can go ahead and answer. 2 MR. WHITE: If you understand the question.</p> <p>4 THE WITNESS: Repeat it one more time, or let me ask a question to make sure I understand it.</p> <p>6 Does creation science and intelligent design both come to the same conclusion, is that what you are asking?</p> <p>9 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>10 Q. Let just ask the question, does intelligent design theory reach any conclusions that are different from the conclusions reached by creation science?</p> <p>14 A. Oh, for sure.</p> <p>15 Q. What are the differences? What different conclusions does -- what conclusions does intelligent design theory reach that are --</p> <p>18 A. Well, creation science, I think, is really an area of apologetics, religious apologetics. They want the science to validate the scriptural content of Genesis, okay? And intelligent design isn't going to go that far. You can say that -- looking at the data, what we know in terms of chemistry and physics, genetics and natural selection, that there is a real design, and you stop</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 35</p> <p>1 we all agree is there real or apparent? Okay? It 2 is a valid question and I think we should be 3 addressing it at a scientific level in our 4 inquiries.</p> <p>5 It is that simple, okay? It doesn't have 6 any basis of going further than looking or devising 7 theories or hypotheses to look at how you detect 8 design. Our record of life on this planet, does it 9 fit with an intelligent agent or, again, is natural 10 law, in terms of physics and chemistry, of what we 11 know of genetics, sufficient to produce the 12 diversity that we see in life?</p> <p>13 And you end right there, yes or no. It 14 is an interesting question, it is a valid question, 15 and it should be addressed. I mean, and that's why 16 we are here, you know? That's what Ken Miller is 17 writing about. Robert Pennock, he is asking the 18 question, can natural law come up with de novo 19 information?</p> <p>20 Q. Does intelligent design theory reach any 21 conclusions that are different from the conclusions 22 reached by creation science?</p> <p>23 MR. WHITE: Objection as to vagueness, 24 ambiguity.</p> <p>25 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 37</p> <p>1 there.</p> <p>2 Q. Can you tell me what theistic evolution is?</p> <p>4 A. Theistic evolution is the position, as I understand it, that there is a designer or creator that designed the universe, started the clock going, designed the laws of physics and chemistry, and that life, through those laws, emerged and has evolved. But it is more of an impersonal activity. In other words, the machine was started and is removed from that machine, so that organisms do evolve in terms of our common consensus.</p> <p>13 Q. Can someone who believes in theistic evolution also believe that God in some way guides the progress of evolution?</p> <p>16 A. Sure, I mean I think you have the entire spectrum of people that believe in a designer or creator in terms of his participation in the world as we know it.</p> <p>20 Q. What is the difference between theistic evolution and intelligent design theory?</p> <p>22 A. Theistic evolutionists, I think, agree that given, for instance, the planet earth in its early stages of development had incorporated in it all the necessary components for the emergence of</p>

10 (Pages 34 to 37)

Page 38	Page 40
1 life and its subsequent diversity, that there is no 2 input from the designer from that point, okay? 3 So it is really consistent with the 4 Darwinian viewpoint that you just started it by an 5 intelligent agent or God and then everything 6 unfolds. 7 Intelligent design sees a more active 8 part of a designer from the sense that from my own 9 perspective I look at the bacterial flagellum, it 10 has stators and rotors and propellers and u-joints, 11 it is battery powered, it looks like engines that 12 Mazda makes, in one sense, but it is much more 13 sophisticated because there is an algorithm or 14 program that directs its assembly from genetic 15 information and it regulates the timing of synthesis 16 and the position where it is assembled, that that is 17 a product of intelligence. 18 And from my position you don't get these 19 machines by totally natural process. I mean, they 20 can change and evolve, I don't know at what level or 21 to what extent, but the prototypic or aboriginal 22 machine has all the hallmarks of design based on our 23 experience of machines that we manufacture.	1 Q. Do you have a scientific opinion as to 2 who the intelligent designer is? 3 A. No. 4 Q. Do you have a personal opinion? 5 A. Yes, I do. 6 Q. You do. What is your personal opinion? 7 MR. WHITE: Objection as to relevancy. 8 Go ahead. 9 THE WITNESS: I want to make sure that 10 this is -- I mean, I have a problem in terms of 11 giving my opinion, but my experience, when asked 12 these questions, is that they are somewhat loaded. 13 In other words, in my discussion with Robert Pennock 14 when he was here and we were discussing type III 15 secretory systems and the flagellum, claims of 16 intelligent design, he then turned on me in this 17 public audience and said, "Who is the creator?" 18 And I said, "Well, I have an opinion, but 19 we are talking science, why do you want to bring 20 religion into the question?" 21 No, "Who is the creator? Tell us who the 22 creator is?" 23 And in part I think there is an attempt 24 to marginalize people in this area as 25 fundamentalists, you know, Christians that want to
Page 39	Page 41
1 development of life forms on the planet earth, does 2 intelligent design make any other scientific claims? 3 MR. WHITE: Objection, it is misleading. 4 THE WITNESS: I'm not quite sure what you 5 mean in terms of other scientific claims. Give me 6 an example. You know, is it going to tell me that 7 butter is better for me than margarine? I mean -- 8 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 9 Q. I guess let me try to see if I can 10 rephrase it. 11 What is the scientific content of an 12 intelligent designer, other than the ultimate 13 assertion that there is a designer or designers? 14 A. That's the main principle, okay? 15 Q. Is there anything else? 16 A. I would have to think about it in terms 17 of the question. So if we proceed, I will come back 18 to that. 19 Q. Do you have an opinion, a personal 20 opinion, as to who or what the intelligent designer 21 is? 22 MR. WHITE: Objection as to are you 23 asking for his personal opinion or his opinion as a 24 scientist? 25 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:	1 get the bible back into the classroom, and that's 2 invalid. But I am a Christian, that's my personal 3 faith. 4 And I also would like to state for the 5 record that that is not my family's faith tradition. 6 I was an agnostic, probably an atheist, and when I 7 took a course in biology and was confronted with the 8 design in the bacteriophage Landa, it made me pause 9 and think, is this the product of chance and 10 necessity? 11 Okay, so I am a Christian because of the 12 data, not despite it. 13 Q. So this experience led you to become a 14 Christian? 15 MR. WHITE: Objection as of "this 16 experience." 17 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 18 Q. The experience when you were studying 19 this life form? 20 A. No, I think it was a factor, you know, in 21 my own personal journey, but I had no reason to -- 22 at the point until I started taking biology classes 23 -- in fact, I was an English history major that took 24 a general chemistry course that had a molecular 25 biology component and was so fascinated by the

11 (Pages 38 to 41)

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 42</p> <p>1 information that I changed my major, because I was 2 interested in the science, the beauty of the 3 science, and the more I studied, it had 4 implications.</p> <p>5 Q. This is when you were an undergraduate, 6 did you say?</p> <p>7 A. Right.</p> <p>8 Q. So is it correct that your personal 9 opinion is that the intelligent designer is the God 10 of Christianity?</p> <p>11 A. Yes.</p> <p>12 Q. Is there a consensus within intelligent 13 design theory as to who the designer is or what it 14 is?</p> <p>15 A. No.</p> <p>16 Q. Does intelligent design theory make any 17 claims as to who or what the designer is?</p> <p>18 A. No, in a formal sense it doesn't. It 19 says you can infer design and therefore designer, 20 but that's as far as the science goes.</p> <p>21 Q. Does intelligent design theory rule out 22 any type of possible designers?</p> <p>23 Q. Not necessarily.</p> <p>24 Q. Does intelligent design theory rule out 25 all possible and natural actors as designers?</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 44</p> <p>1 A. Not to my knowledge.</p> <p>2 Q. Does intelligent design theory hold that 3 there is only one designer or is it -- can it be 4 consistent with intelligent design theory that there 5 might be multiple designers?</p> <p>6 A. No, I mean -- again, you can just infer 7 design from the public evidence and, you know -- I 8 mean, we have multiple engineers that work in 9 consortia to produce machines today, who is to say 10 it is not true in the biological world? I don't 11 know.</p> <p>12 Q. And under intelligent design theory, is 13 it possible that the designers are -- that there 14 might be multiple competing designers?</p> <p>15 A. I don't know. I don't know what you mean 16 by in terms of competing designers.</p> <p>17 Q. As opposed to designers who are working 18 together with each other, designers who are trying 19 to come up with life forms that end up competing or 20 opposing each other?</p> <p>21 MR. WHITE: Objection, calls for 22 speculation.</p> <p>23 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>24 Q. Is that possible under your theory?</p> <p>25 A. Yes, I mean, that's speculative, and]</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 43</p> <p>1 A. Natural what? I didn't hear your --</p> <p>2 Q. Natural actors.</p> <p>3 A. Natural actors?</p> <p>4 Q. Yes.</p> <p>5 MR. WHITE: Objection, vague, ambiguous.</p> <p>6 What do you mean by natural actors?</p> <p>7 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>8 Q. Under intelligent design theory, is it 9 possible that space aliens could be the designers?</p> <p>10 MR. WHITE: I didn't hear what you said. 11 under what?</p> <p>12 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>13 Q. Under intelligent design theory, is it 14 possible that space aliens could be the designers?</p> <p>15 A. Sure.</p> <p>16 Q. Is it possible that time traveling humans 17 could be designers?</p> <p>18 A. I don't know. I mean, that's 19 speculation. I don't know. I mean, that's asking 20 me to speculate on time travel, which is a 21 hypothetical situation, and so I don't think it is 22 really pertinent to my contribution or expertise.</p> <p>23 Q. Has any work been done within intelligent 24 design theory relating to the issue of who the 25 designer is?</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 45</p> <p>1 think it would be too early to say, but I wouldn't 2 rule it out. I mean, again -- never mind, I will 3 leave it at that.</p> <p>4 Q. Is intelligent design theory in any way 5 intended to eventually determine which of these 6 possibilities is the designer?</p> <p>7 A. No, not formally. I think it will have 8 implications, but it is not -- no, no, I think -- 9 you know, the book is open in terms of the 10 implications of who the designer is. That 11 translates into philosophy and religion and, you 12 know, there is plenty of writing and experts on 13 that.</p> <p>14 Q. So do I understand you correctly that the 15 theory is not even going to try to determine who or 16 what the designers are or is?</p> <p>17 A. I think there are people within the 18 design community that have opinions with respect to 19 that, but, you know, from my own perspective I don't 20 have an agenda.</p> <p>21 Q. Are there any kind of experiments or 22 empirical studies that could be done in order to 23 attempt or help determine who or what the designer 24 or designers is or are?</p> <p>25 MR. WHITE: Are you speaking currently?</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 46</p> <p>1 I didn't get the question, I guess. 2 THE WITNESS: Are there people that are 3 actively participating in the intelligent design 4 movement to identify who the designer is? 5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 6 Q. Well, actually I will ask another 7 question. 8 A. No, again, at this stage saying is a 9 design apparent or is it real? 10 Q. Are there any experiments or empirical 11 studies that can be done to try to shed some light 12 on what the nature of the designer is? 13 A. No, not to my knowledge. 14 Q. Do you have a scientific opinion as to 15 how often the designer intervenes in the development 16 of living systems or beings? 17 A. No, at this point it is too speculative. 18 I mean, it evolves around the question in terms of 19 what is the genetic capacity of any organism to 20 change? I don't know the answer to that question, 21 nor do any of my colleagues that are Darwinists or 22 evolutionists, that's an open-ended question. 23 Q. Do you have a personal opinion on that 24 question? 25 A. I think it is limited. From the</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 46</p> <p>1 history of life on the earth or whether the 2 intelligent designer kept intervening periodically 3 afterwards? 4 MR. WHITE: Objection, asked and 5 answered. Go ahead. It's the same question. 6 THE WITNESS: Again, I am not committed 7 at this point. 8 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 9 Q. Do you have a personal belief on the 10 matter? 11 MR. WHITE: Objection as to relevance. 12 THE WITNESS: I mean, my own personal 13 belief, I have some speculations but I hold them as 14 speculations. Going back to the record, I am not a 15 paleontologist, although I have read some Stephen 16 Jay Gould. When you look at the fossil record, the 17 lesson of the fossil record is stasis, not 18 modification. So that a turtle nowadays looks like 19 a turtle 30 million years ago. 20 So we have got the Cambrian explosion 21 where we can look at the fossil record from the 22 evidence that we have now, and this may change, I 23 don't know, that there are very -- I mean, there are 24 organisms that are present below the Cambrian strata 25 and then suddenly you have this biological big bang.</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 47</p> <p>1 experiments that have been done by Lenski at 2 Michigan State, you are running E. coli through -- 3 or Saccharomyces cerevisiae through 20,000, 30,000 4 generations in a hemostat, and you end up with the 5 same organism. And there are minor variation, 6 depending upon what selection -- what selective 7 pressure you apply, but the change is surprisingly 8 little. 9 MR. WHITE: Alex, when you ask the 10 question, you are asking for which type of opinion, 11 personal or scientific? 12 MR. LUCHENITSER: That was a personal 13 opinion. 14 MR. WHITE: Just off the record. 15 (Off the record.) 16 MR. LUCHENITSER: Back on the record. 17 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 18 Q. So let's go back to the question of how 19 often the intelligent designer intervenes. Is it 20 your belief that it is fairly often? Would you say 21 more than once every few million years? 22 A. That's speculation, I have no idea at 23 this point. 24 Q. Do you have a belief as to whether the 25 intelligent designer only intervened in the early</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 49</p> <p>1 body forms in a fairly -- patterns that are 2 consistent with organisms we find today that appear 3 to have a sudden appearance. 4 Again, I'm not willing to speculate in 5 terms of where the designer interjected his design. 6 I know that there are aspects of Darwinism that are 7 going to hold true. 8 I mean, again the history of science is 9 where you have two competing ideas, theories, or you 10 are looking at new data and trying to incorporate it 11 into our existing interpretations, there will be 12 individuals that are on the extreme sides of each. 13 But in general, you will find that there will be 14 a melding or a blending of these ideas as we get a 15 better handle and more data. 16 Q. So do I correctly understand that you 17 have no scientific opinion as to how often the 18 intelligent designer creates? 19 A. No. 20 Q. Would I also be correct in assuming that 21 your personal opinion with respect to the Cambrian 22 explosion, for example, would be that the 23 intelligent designer was responsible for the 24 Cambrian explosion? 25 A. It is consistent with the design</p>

Page 50	Page 52
<p>1 hypothesis. It is a problem for the Darwinists and 2 they recognize it, and that is in the published 3 literature, that there are evolutionary biologists 4 that look at Cambrian explosion as a problem, from 5 Simon Conway Morris in the U.K. to people in this 6 country.</p> <p>7 There are problems in our current 8 understanding of biological systems and how you can 9 get spontaneous generation or the arrival of the 10 first ancestral organisms from a Darwinian 11 perspective.</p> <p>12 Q. Are you aware of any scientific 13 literature in the field of evolution that holds that 14 what we call the Cambrian explosion was not as 15 sudden an event as scientists might have thought 23 16 years ago, but was more of a gradual event?</p> <p>17 A. We know from the geologic history the 18 time period that is involved. I'm not an expert on 19 that, but it is -- from geological time it is pretty 20 short. And yet again, it has got to be viewed from 21 a perspective. If it is 40 million years 22 geologically, yes, that's a breath. But at the same 23 time, you know, we have a hard time imagining that 24 from our own experience.</p> <p>25 Q. Does intelligent design theory have any</p>	<p>1 limit ourself to a single common ancestor, a single 2 root to the tree of life, but it looks like it is 3 now spread out. 4 Now, that is consistent as well with the 5 intelligent design interpretation, but again, where 6 the designer is acting in this processes is too 7 premature.</p> <p>8 Q. Are you aware of any proposed experiments 9 or empirical analysis or studies that would be 10 designed to determine how often the designer 11 intervenes?</p> <p>12 MR. WHITE: Objection, over broad.</p> <p>13 THE WITNESS: Yes, I mean, that's a broad 14 question. And not formally, no.</p> <p>15 I think again it goes back to the 16 question of what is the limits of genetic change of 17 any organism which is an unknown quantity, can 18 Saccharomyces evolve into a basidiomycetes from a 19 sacecharomyces, or something like this. Can a 20 prokaryote evolve into a eukaryote, were those 21 separate evolutionary events, you know?</p> <p>22 But to directly ask the question: Where 23 has the designer directly intervened? No. But if 24 we know the question in terms of limits -- and part 25 of this will come out empirically through genomic</p>
Page 51	Page 53
<p>1 -- does intelligent design theory draw any 2 conclusions as to how often the intelligent designer 3 intervenes?</p> <p>4 A. No. No. I want to go back and qualify 5 one statement before.</p> <p>6 Until recently, you know, the consensus 7 opinion in Darwinian theory was -- I mean, if you 8 distill evolution down to a one-liner here, it is 9 decent with modification, and there is the 10 assumption that there is decent from common 11 ancestors.</p> <p>12 One of the papers that I submitted in my 13 expert report is from Carl Woese, who is a prominent 14 evolutionist at the University of Illinois. Anybody 15 in this area knows who Carl Woese is. I mean, he 16 led a whole generation of biologists sequencing 17 ribosomal RNA for, you know, systematic purposes.</p> <p>18 But he states that, you know, a lot of 19 our ideas in evolution, including common descent from 20 a primordial organism, were conjectures of 19th 21 century biologists, but they were embedded in stone 22 and became part of the theory.</p> <p>23 Now our experience and his experience is 24 that that's not necessarily so. There could have 25 been multiple origins of organisms and we shouldn't</p>	<p>1 analyses, so that's why I say it is premature. We 2 have 500 bacterial genomes now, a number of 3 eukaryotic organisms, but this is in the last -- 4 since 1994, whatever.</p> <p>5 It has been surprising in terms of the 6 implications of comparing genomes from different 7 groups of organisms that we thought were disparately 8 related and now we are finding that there is 9 commonality, and that those bacterial systems are in 10 the order of 20 to 30 percent unique DNA in 11 different groups.</p> <p>12 So these are questions that will bear on 13 what you are asking, but not directly, it is going 14 to be indirect.</p> <p>15 Q. You said that the limits are unknown, and 16 I understand you were referring to the limits to the 17 extent which one living system or life form can 18 evolve into another one?</p> <p>19 A. Right.</p> <p>20 Q. If the limits are unknown, how can 21 intelligent design theory come to the conclusion 22 that there an intelligent designer?</p> <p>23 A. Well, how can on the other side you make 24 assertions that there is no limit and that you can, 25 as with Escherichia coli, evolve into an organism of</p>

14 (Pages 50 to 53)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 54</p> <p>1 trillions of cells that can contemplate their 2 existence in the universe, you know, supposedly 3 without purpose? 4 So I think it goes both ways. It's a 5 question, it's a broad question that impacts both 6 sides of this debate. 7 Q. But let me try to re-ask my question. If 8 the limits are unknown, how can intelligent design theory come 9 to the conclusion that there is a designer? 10 A. Again, you go back to the question of 11 looking at nature and seeing aspects of design that 12 all biologists recognize is there. Okay? And by 13 our experience is that design real or apparent? 14 There are going to be limitations from 15 our present knowledge in terms of what contribution 16 evolution has made in that diversity and 17 modification of design, how much creativity is 18 present in natural selection to modify organisms, 19 and how much of it is fixed in the initial design of 20 the organism, okay? 21 But I think from -- again, the fact that 22 we are dealing with molecular machines that have all 23 the hallmarks of manmade intelligently designed 24 machines, we can infer there is a designer that has 25 been active in our natural world. That's the limit,</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 56</p> <p>1 Q. Are any experiments possible with respect 2 to the question of how often the designer 3 intervened? 4 A. I think so. Ultimately, these are 5 questions that are being pondered in terms of how to 6 address them. What is the, you know, what we call 7 the sequence space in protein evolution? We look at 8 the genetic code, we look at proteins as a true 9 code. There are symbols involved in conferring 10 information. 11 Are there limits to how that code can be 12 used? Just like if you use the alphabet, we can 13 randomly mix it together and get nonsense, you can 14 also get words that convey information as well. 15 In the proteins, it may be the same 16 thing. Proteins -- there may be sequences that are 17 a subset of the possible combinations that will have 18 activity in organisms. And as we get a handle on 19 that, and there are people in the intelligent design 20 working on this, Doug Axe, would be an example, that 21 are looking at constraints of protein sequence in 22 terms of function and randomness versus actual 23 sequence function, okay? 24 Again, these are questions that are 25 incubating at this point in terms of how they are</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 55</p> <p>1 not going to try to -- I don't want to get into an 2 argument with you. 3 But let me try to see if you can 4 affirmatively answer the question. If the limits 5 are unknown, how can intelligent design theory come 6 to the conclusion that there is a designer? 7 A. Again, you go back to the question of 8 looking at nature and seeing aspects of design that 9 all biologists recognize is there. Okay? And by 10 our experience is that design real or apparent? 11 There are going to be limitations from 12 our present knowledge in terms of what contribution 13 evolution has made in that diversity and 14 modification of design, how much creativity is 15 present in natural selection to modify organisms, 16 and how much of it is fixed in the initial design of 17 the organism, okay? 18 But I think from -- again, the fact that 19 we are dealing with molecular machines that have all 20 the hallmarks of manmade intelligently designed 21 machines, we can infer there is a designer that has 22 been active in our natural world. That's the limit,</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 57</p> <p>1 going to be addressed empirically. 2 Q. Does intelligent design theory have an 3 opinion on how living things come into being? 4 A. What do you mean by coming into being, 5 that they are created de novo or are modified from 6 existing designs? 7 Q. Yes. 8 A. It's speculation at this point. I mean, 9 people have opinions, but those are speculative. 10 Q. Is there consensus within the intelligent 11 design field on that issue? 12 A. No. 13 Q. Do you have a personal opinion on that? 14 First, let me ask, do you have a scientific opinion 15 on that? 16 A. Rephrase the question so I am -- 17 Q. Do you have a scientific opinion on the 18 question of how living things come into being under 19 intelligent design theory? 20 A. I have a scientific opinion that at this 21 point is speculative, based on knowledge that from 22 my experience and knowledge of the literature, 23 organisms do have the capacity to change over time, 24 no one is arguing that. But my position is that 25 change is limited.</p>

15 (Pages 54 to 57)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 58</p> <p>1 Q. So is it your opinion that when a new 2 kind of organism first appears, the organism, on the 3 one hand, is it developed from a previously existing 4 organism or is it developed out of inanimate matter?</p> <p>5 MR. WHITE: Objection, compound question.</p> <p>6 THE WITNESS: I mean, ultimately whatever 7 side you agree on, there has got to be either an 8 intelligent molding of the elements of this earth 9 into a living organism or it occurs spontaneously.</p> <p>10 Okay? So there is a spontaneous appearance of 11 organisms. How that comes about, again that is 12 speculative.</p> <p>13 If you look at the fossil record, from my 14 understanding, and I'm not an expert paleontologist, 15 but from what I have read by experts in the area, 16 there is a lack of intermediates. There is sudden 17 appearance of organisms in the fossil record.</p> <p>18 Does that mean they appeared <i>de novo</i>? 19 Not necessarily. I can say, well, maybe there was 20 some catastrophic environmental insult where the 21 major forms of life were destroyed or went extinct 22 and these other organisms that suddenly appear were 23 in a very specific niche or in low concentration and we 24 don't have the record. I mean that's possible, I 25 don't know. Do you see what I am saying?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 60</p> <p>1 Cambrian explosion, were they developed by the 2 modification of other species or were they developed 3 out of inanimate matter or did they just suddenly 4 appear?</p> <p>5 A. That's speculation.</p> <p>6 MR. WHITE: Also objection, his personal 7 opinion has no relevancy here. You are asking him 8 -- he is here as an expert.</p> <p>9 THE WITNESS: Yes, like I said, I am not 10 a paleontologist. But again, in my reading of the 11 literature, this is a question, it's a problem in 12 terms of sudden appearance of organisms in the 13 geologic record, the lack of transitional forms.</p> <p>14 The record of biology on this planet is 15 one of extinction, that's the most common event in 16 terms of looking at the overall record, okay?</p> <p>17 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>18 Q. Do some adherents to intelligent design 19 theory believe that organisms appeared either out of 20 inanimate matter or out of just nothing?</p> <p>21 MR. WHITE: Objection, calls for 22 speculation, no showing he has personal knowledge.</p> <p>23 THE WITNESS: Yeah, I mean I haven't 24 talked to people specifically about that. I mean, 25 <i>de novo</i> appearance, out of nothing, you know, other</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 59</p> <p>1 In other words, as a microbiologist, 2 maybe you can appreciate this, if I take a tube of 3 <i>Escherichia coli</i> bacterium that is sensitive to an 4 antibiotic, I can, from experience, know that within 5 those billions of cells there are three or four that 6 are resistant to Streptomycin.</p> <p>7 Can I find them by just sorting through 8 them? I don't have enough time in my life. If I 9 put a selective pressure on them, I can uncover 10 them. They were there in a minuscule quantity that 11 is below my power of detection, but they were there 12 nonetheless. And if I apply the right selection, 13 the right catastrophic, they are there the next 14 morning for me.</p> <p>15 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>16 Q. Can you give me some examples of a 17 species that appear to have appeared suddenly in the 18 fossil record?</p> <p>19 A. Again, I think if you go back to the 20 Cambrian explosion, you have all the present body 21 plans, from my understanding, developmental patterns 22 that are suddenly present.</p> <p>23 Q. Do you have an opinion as to the -- and 24 I'm asking about your personal opinion, the various 25 species that appeared at the beginning of the</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 61</p> <p>1 than inorganic matter? Again, that's the problem on 2 both sides in terms of mechanism. But we know that 3 we are composed of the elements we find in the 4 earth, and that's consistent with evolutionary 5 perspective, if you believe in spontaneous 6 generation, or design, if you believe in a designer 7 or creator.</p> <p>8 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>9 Q. If children in the Dover School District 10 were taught that life forms appeared out of nothing, 11 do you think that that would be an incorrect 12 teaching?</p> <p>13 MR. WHITE: Are you asking a 14 hypothetical?</p> <p>15 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>16 Q. Yes, hypothetical.</p> <p>17 A. Hypothetical? From public evidence, no, 18 because ultimately that's the question in terms of 19 how life arose on this planet, and there are various 20 opinions.</p> <p>21 Let me put it this way. I think one of 22 the major contributions to biology that made it 23 transcend the really descriptive discipline of 24 natural history into manipulative science, 25 experimental science, was Pasteur's disproval of the</p>

16 (Pages 58 to 61)

Page 62	Page 64
<p>1 theory of spontaneous generation. It had profound 2 implications in terms of how we conduct science in 3 the biology arena, okay?</p> <p>4 Any biologist that you ask on one level, 5 you know, do you believe in spontaneous generation? 6 If I take inorganic material, all the components and 7 life systems: nitrogen, carbon, oxygen, hydrogen, et 8 cetera, and mix them together, am I going to get 9 organisms appearing spontaneously? They will say 10 no.</p> <p>11 Yet at the same time, to be a consistent 12 Darwinist where you believe that the natural laws of 13 chemistry and physics, chance and necessity, can 14 produce life, you believe in spontaneous generation.</p> <p>15 Q. Let me --</p> <p>16 A. So going back to Dover, Pennsylvania, if 17 you make the statement, you know, can life arise 18 spontaneously? Yes, we know it happened, in terms 19 of there was a period in geological history of this 20 earth where there was no life and there was a period 21 where it appears. Now, how that happened? If you 22 are a materialist, then you are going to explain it 23 in terms of natural law, you know? But if there is 24 a design involved, then -- a designer involved, then 25 it is an intervention of those natural laws that</p>	<p>1 legitimate to be asking these questions, it is 2 legitimate to present them to students, but not to 3 go beyond our current body of knowledge. And when 4 you get into speculation, recognize it as 5 speculative.</p> <p>6 Q. So intelligent design doesn't make any 7 claims or assertions as to whether on the one hand, 8 A, the designer modified the code of existing living 9 species to produce new living species, or, two, on 10 the other hand, the designer just created new living 11 species out of either inanimate matter or --</p> <p>12 A. I think at this stage both positions are 13 legitimate.</p> <p>14 Q. Do you have a personal preference as to 15 which one is correct, a personal intuition or --</p> <p>16 MR. WHITE: Objection as to relevancy as 17 to his personal views.</p> <p>18 THE WITNESS: I have a personal opinion. 19 It is not -- I mean, it is evolving in and of 20 itself.</p> <p>21 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>22 Q. Can you tell me what that is?</p> <p>23 A. It's going to be a combination of both.</p> <p>24 MR. WHITE: Hold on, I just want to 25 understand. What are you asking him as an opinion,</p>
Page 63	Page 65
<p>1 allowed this to happen.</p> <p>2 Q. Let me try to make what I am asking 3 clear. Let's forget about how microscopic life 4 forms originally arose and focus only on complex 5 animal species.</p> <p>6 Is it a tenant of intelligent design that 7 it is possible that complex animal species might 8 have appeared abruptly as opposed to developing from 9 other animal species? For example, is it consistent 10 with intelligent design that it is possible that 11 dinosaurs might have just appeared abruptly instead 12 of developing from smaller reptiles, or whatever 13 evolution holds their predecessors would be?</p> <p>14 MR. WHITE: You are asking him as an 15 intelligent design theory?</p> <p>16 THE WITNESS: All I would say, what is 17 appropriate is that if we look at life on this 18 planet, if we look at the geological record, there 19 is the sudden appearance of different diverse life 20 forms. That's the record. How that happened, the 21 mechanism, was there an intelligent agent?</p> <p>22 Hypothetically, yes. Can these things evolve one to 23 the other? Hypothetically, yes. And I would leave 24 it at that.</p> <p>25 This an active area of research, it is</p>	<p>1 as a scientist or just as a guy on the street?</p> <p>2 MR. LUCHENITSER: Either as a scientist 3 or a personal opinion.</p> <p>4 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>5 Q. Your personal opinion informed by your 6 scientific knowledge.</p> <p>7 A. Okay, so my personal opinion informed by 8 my scientific background, is it -- it is going to 9 fall out there is a combination of both. There will 10 probably be organisms that appear that were designed 11 as aboriginal forms that have diversified and 12 evolved over time, okay?</p> <p>13 Q. Are there any experiments or empirical 14 studies that intelligent design theorists can do on 15 the issue of how organisms appear, you know, how new 16 organisms appear and develop?</p> <p>17 A. Those are experiments that are ongoing in 18 terms of the general scientific community. I mean, 19 you can take microorganisms and grow them in 20 continuous culture for months and years in 21 generation times of 20 minutes, that from 22 generational perspective can be the equivalent of 23 hundreds of thousands of years and ask how much 24 change do we see?</p> <p>25 So those are experiments that are</p>

17 (Pages 62 to 65)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 66</p> <p>1 pertinent to these questions in terms of change over 2 time. 3 Q. So would those experiments be designed to 4 observe action by an intelligent designer? 5 A. No, they are designed to look at the 6 limits of genetic change under varying environmental 7 conditions to model evolutionary theory or to 8 provide data that can be interpreted from a design 9 perspective. 10 Q. Are there any experiments or empirical 11 studies that are possible on the question of how an 12 intelligent designer acts when producing a new 13 species? 14 MR. WHITE: Objection, asked and 15 answered, and confusing. 16 THE WITNESS: Are you asking me are there 17 experiments that will define where design is 18 implicit in the appearance of -- 19 BY MR. LUCRENTIUS: 20 Q. No, the experiments -- are there any 21 experiments that are possible on the question of 22 whether the designer acts either, one, by modifying 23 the genetic code of an existing life form or, two, 24 by just creating a new life form from scratch out of 25 inanimate matter or design out of nothing?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 68</p> <p>1 model in terms of how life appeared and has 2 diversified over time, yes. 3 Q. Is intelligent design theory capable of 4 demonstrating how an organism was designed? 5 A. Is intelligent design capable of 6 determining how an organism was designed? 7 Q. Right. 8 A. Not at this point. Neither is it true 9 for any biologist at this point in time. 10 Q. Does intelligent design theory have any 11 conclusions or opinions on which organisms were 12 designed or what kinds of organisms were designed? 13 A. No, no. 14 Q. Do you have an opinion on that basis in 15 your own scientific experience or knowledge? 16 A. No. 17 Q. Is there any way to I-D that intelligent 18 design theory can distinguish between organisms that 19 were designed and organisms that evolved? 20 A. Not empirically, but can you affirm, 21 This is where genomic analysis is going to come in. 22 At my level, the fact that different types of 23 organisms, groups of organisms, the alpha 24 proteobacteria from the beta proteobacteria which 25 are within organisms within each group show</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 67</p> <p>1 A. No, I mean -- 2 MR. WHITE: Objection, compound question. 3 THE WITNESS: Okay, I mean, putting it in 4 this perspective, I mean, evolutionary science and 5 intelligent design is a historical science in terms 6 of -- I think I quoted in my expert report Ernst 7 Mayer, who is one of the most prominent of all 8 evolutionists, who just died recently, stated that 9 "Laws and experiments are inappropriate for the 10 explication of such events and processes. Instead 11 one constructs a historical narrative consisting of 12 a tentative reconstruction of the particular 13 scenario that lead to the tentative events one is 14 trying to explain." 15 So it is difficult when you ask me what 16 experiments are going to go back and tell us what 17 happened historically. You know, from both sides 18 that's very difficult, and it is somewhat unique in 19 terms of experimental science to the question of 20 evolution. It is an historic inference looking at 21 the record that we have. 22 Q. You say intelligent design theory is also 23 a historical science? 24 A. In terms of looking at the past record of 25 life on this planet and interpreting it as to a</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 69</p> <p>1 relationship, but there are differences between 20 2 to 30 percent novel DNA in all these major groups of 3 bacteria. The question arises, where does that 4 novelty come in. 5 Q. So does intelligent design theory contain 6 any conclusions or assertions other than that 7 neo-Darwinian theory doesn't adequately explain the 8 development of life on earth and that an intelligent 9 designer is responsible for the development of the 10 life on earth? 11 A. Yes, I mean that's the basic principle, 12 is that -- you know, my professional opinion, 13 natural selection, time, laws of chemistry and 14 physics are inadequate to explain life as we know 15 it. It has all the hallmarks of design. 16 You look at the genetic code, it is the 17 most sophisticated information storage system in the 18 universe as digital readout. If it is truly an 19 arbitrary code, then there is no reason why triplets 20 for each amino acid have that specific designation, 21 yet recent computer analysis shows that it is the 22 optimum code of all potential theoretical codes that 23 would be formed by random chance to negate the 24 effect of point mutations, which I find astounding. 25 Of the millions of combinations of</p>

Page 70	Page 72
<p>1 triplets, you know, for the entire 20 amino acids 2 that it is coding for, we find, by empirical 3 analysis, that the genetic code is optimized to 4 minimize the effects of base changes in that code. 5 Now, that causes me to pause and wonder. 6 It causes my colleagues to pause and wonder how is 7 nature so lucky on random chance? You know, that 8 this frozen accident, Francis Crick refers to it as 9 the genetic code, is mind boggling. So --</p> <p>10 Q. Uh-huh. Let me just go back, though. 11 Do you have a scientific opinion on 12 whether anything above complex molecular systems 13 were designed? By that I mean, do you have a 14 scientific opinion as to whether any complex animal 15 species were designed as opposed to just the 16 microscopic complex biological systems?</p> <p>17 A. No, no. Again, it goes back to this 18 question of where is the designer intervening in 19 this process? And, you know, I don't know. I mean, 20 that's speculation.</p> <p>21 Q. Is there any kind of consensus in the 22 intelligent design on that issue?</p> <p>23 A. You have people from the entire spectrum 24 from theistic evolutionists all the way up to 25 six-day creationists. It is a pretty broad tent in</p>	<p>1 know? 2 BY MR. LUCHEVITSER: 3 Q. Again, I'll give another hypothetical. 4 If students in the Dover School District were taught 5 that the earth's history can compress into a 6 framework of several thousand years, would they be 7 misled about scientific knowledge? 8 A. It's inconsistent with the present body 9 interpretation, okay? 10 Q. What is your belief on about how long ago 11 life first appeared on earth? 12 A. Well, from the fossil record you have 13 fossil bacteria that appear at 3.8 billion years. 14 somewhere around that time period. 15 Q. And what is your opinion on how long ago 16 the first multi-cellular animals on earth appeared? 17 A. I'm not a paleontologist, I don't know 18 what the time frame is, but it's a significant 19 period afterwards from the first appearance of 20 prokaryotes. 21 Q. Do you have any opinion or knowledge as 22 to how long ago the first land dwelling animals 23 appeared on earth? 24 A. Again, that's changed, from my 25 experience, over time, so I don't -- I don't fix a</p>
Page 71	Page 73
<p>1 terms of people that ascribe to intelligent design. 2 Q. How old do you think the universe is? 3 A. Well, the current, you know, consensus 4 was 20 billion years, although the COBE satellite 5 experiment measurements have reduced that to about 6 12.5 billion years in terms of the age of universe. 7 The earth, according to multiple scientific 8 independent analyses, is somewhere around 4.5 9 billion years old. 10 Q. Do you accept those concepts? 11 A. Yes. 12 Q. Does intelligent design theory accept 13 those beliefs about the age of the universe and the 14 age of the earth? 15 A. There is not a set consensus, okay? 16 Although I think it is a prominent position. But 17 there are both. I mean, from the camp you have your 18 old earthers and young earthers and both ascribing 19 to a designer. 20 Q. So are there some scientists within the 21 fields of intelligent design theory who believe that 22 earth is less than 10,000 years old? 23 MR. WHITE: Objection, speculation, lack 24 of relevancy. 25 THE WITNESS: Oh, I'm sure there are, you</p>	<p>1 specific time period. Again, it's not my area of 2 expertise. 3 Q. Do you know what the consensus is in the 4 field of paleontology on that? 5 A. I have read it, but I don't recall a 6 specific number, but I don't have any problem with 7 it. 8 Q. Would 450 million years ago sound right? 9 A. Sure. 10 Q. You don't have any reason to disagree 11 with that consensus? 12 A. No. 13 MR. WHITE: I'll object to this line of 14 questioning. He said this is all outside of his 15 area of expertise. 16 BY MR. LUCHEVITSER: 17 Q. Does intelligent design theory accept the 18 general consensus among paleontologists as to the 19 time line of the development of major kinds of life 20 on earth? 21 A. I think you have a spectrum of people 22 that are looking at that information. Some of them 23 are constrained by their religious beliefs and, you 24 know, there are scientific creationists within the 25 intelligent design camp that wouldn't say that so</p>

Page 74	Page 76
<p>1 they are looking at a young earth viewpoint. And 2 there are other people that accept an old earth 3 scenario, the sequential appearance of organisms in 4 the geologic record.</p> <p>5 Q. I think before we talked a little bit 6 about the concept of a common ancestry or common 7 decent, and let me try to define common ancestry or 8 decent as not necessarily that life descended from 9 one cell that appeared three or four billion years 10 ago, but that all life today developed from one or a 11 few microorganisms that existed several billion 12 years ago. So let's put aside the question whether 13 it was one or several or a bunch of different 14 ones. Defined broadly in that sense, do 15 you accept the concept of common ancestry or common 16 decent?</p> <p>17 A. I think it is highly speculative for 18 anybody to make an assertion along those lines based 19 on our knowledge, okay? This is looking at 20 historically -- let me put it this way. The 21 empirical science of nutrition can't figure out if 22 butter or margarine is better for us, yet at the 23 same time we make definitive statements that life 24 arose from primitive ancestral organisms on this 25 planet.</p>	<p>1 that you would not accept the proposition of common 2 ancestry or common decent as I have broadly defined 3 it?</p> <p>4 A. Okay, look at -- I am trying to think. I 5 want to quote a couple of things from my report 6 directly so it's in the record. From Carl Woese, 7 who is a leading --</p> <p>8 MR. WHITE: Just for me to clarify, are 9 you talking Exhibit 1? You are quoting from page 10 six; correct?</p> <p>11 THE WITNESS: Yes, at the top of the 12 page.</p> <p>13 So this is in the peer-reviewed 14 literature, this is a prominent evolutionary 15 biologist, and looking at what you are talking about 16 in terms of the origin of life.</p> <p>17 He says, "The creation of the enormous 18 amount of and degree of novelty needed to bring 19 forth modern cells is by no means a matter of waving 20 the usual wand of variation and selection. What was 21 there, what proteins were there to vary in the 22 beginning? Did all proteins evolve from one 23 aboriginal protein to begin with? If you 24 extrapolate that all organisms evolved from one 25 single organism to begin with? Hardly likely!"</p>
Page 75	Page 77
<p>1 It goes back to the question that I have 2 covered before, what is the capacity to change for 3 any organism? That's an unknown at this point. How 4 did these first organisms appear? You know, what is 5 the mechanism whereby natural law can produce a 6 replicating organism? I mean, that again is an 7 unknown quantity.</p> <p>8 We know that the smallest free-living 9 organisms on this planet, the micro plasma, have on 10 the order of 300 to 350 genes, okay? So you've got 11 to have at least that amount of information before 12 you can replicate life that we know it at present. 13 That's a lot of information required.</p> <p>14 Now, is just natural phenomena sufficient 15 to produce that? I'm unwilling to say. From my 16 professional experience, no. Whether you have 10 17 organisms, a hundred organisms, primordial organisms 18 appearing de novo, or one, I mean, you know, it is 19 an event that is on the range of the miraculous, 20 regardless of whether you still believe it is by 21 natural process or a designer, okay?</p> <p>22 So am I making myself clear?</p> <p>23 Q. I'm not sure. It sounds like you are 24 saying -- at least it's your personal opinion, based 25 on the scientific understanding that you have, is</p>	<p>1 Evolution's rule, to which there are fortunately a 2 few exceptions, is that you can't get there from 3 here."</p> <p>4 So the transitions required to go from 5 simple organism complex, we know from experience you 6 can't get there from here from our present 7 understanding of these organisms.</p> <p>8 "Our experience with variation and 9 selection in the modern context does not begin to 10 prepare us for understanding what happened when 11 cellular evolution was in its early rough-and-tumble 12 phases of spewing novelty."</p> <p>13 So you are asking me an opinion on 14 something that the leading evolutionists are at this 15 point speculating on and agreeing that our present 16 understanding of natural selection and variation in 17 modern context doesn't prepare us for understanding 18 what happened in the historic context, or historic 19 events billions and billions of years ago.</p> <p>20 If I can find it --</p> <p>21 So to rephrase where we are, I mean, the 22 question is dealing with common decent, okay?</p> <p>23 Q. I'm trying to get past what happened 24 several billion years ago. I'm trying to kind of 25 say it in layman's terms of once the development of</p>

Page 78	Page 80
<p>1 the life got going, once you got past the really 2 simple microorganisms and once you start getting 3 into more complex organisms, do you accept the 4 proposition that all the complex organisms descended 5 from one or a few more simple organisms that might 6 have existed three billion years ago, or whenever? 7 Or do you not even accept that?</p> <p>8 A. My thinking on this is changing. As a 9 graduate student, a post doc, I didn't really have a 10 problem with that based on our knowledge. But now, 11 again with genomics and what we are understanding in 12 terms of our new understanding of the cell, 13 genetics, the capacity to change, I am finding it 14 harder.</p> <p>15 There is one rule in design that 16 biologists also ascribe to. The more complex an 17 organism or the more complex the machine, the more 18 difficult it is to change it, okay? You just don't 19 throw DNA into a system and expect it to integrate 20 with the program that is present. There are real 21 problems with that.</p> <p>22 So mechanistically from our present 23 knowledge I have difficulty in terms of assuming 24 that there is this gradual evolution of organisms 25 from the simple to the complex.</p>	<p>1 components of the cell and their historical 2 progression?</p> <p>3 Q. Do you have an opinion as to whether 4 humans and apes descended from a common ancestor?</p> <p>5 A. It is possible, you know. The fact that 6 you find 98 percent sequence identity is consistent 7 with that viewpoint. The fact that you find 98 8 percent sequence homology is consistent with a 9 common design.</p> <p>10 Q. Do you have an opinion as to whether 11 humans were specially designed?</p> <p>12 A. Not scientifically. My personal opinion 13 from a philosophical point of view, from a religious 14 point of view, is that, yes, we are rational 15 organisms that have the ability to think in an 16 abstract sense, and that differentiates us from the 17 rest of the biological forms on this planet, okay?</p> <p>18 Now, whether we were the gradual 19 descendant of other simians or specially created, I 20 don't know. I do know that we are -- we have been 21 endowed with certain capabilities that differentiate 22 us from the rest of nature.</p> <p>23 Q. Do you believe that natural selection can 24 explain some aspects of biology?</p> <p>25 A. Oh, for sure, no doubt.</p>
<p>1 Q. And does intelligent design theory have 2 an opinion as to whether these concepts of common 3 decent or gradualism are valid?</p> <p>4 A. Again, there are people on the spectrum. 5 Mike Behe, in my conversations with him, has no 6 problem with common decent from very primitive 7 organisms to the complex. I am probably more 8 distant from that position. I think that there is 9 -- again, my opinion is that there is probably 10 injection of design at various stages, but I don't 11 know what those stages are.</p> <p>12 Just to add to this, I mean, in my 13 readings of Stephen Jay Gould, who is a 14 paleontologist, Simon Conway Morris, is that the 15 record, the fossil record of change, you know, is 16 one of stasis, there is a lack of intermediate 17 forms. We don't have, according to James Shapiro, 18 who is a microbiologist at the University of 19 Chicago, the phylogenetic history of any biochemical 20 pathway for subcellular organelle.</p> <p>21 We can't trace the flagellum back through 22 its heritage phylogenetically. So you are asking me 23 to speculate on, you know, at the organismal level 24 is this possible based on our current understanding 25 when we don't have the data to look at even</p>	<p>1 Q. Are there people within the intelligent 2 design community who would disagree with that 3 conclusion?</p> <p>4 A. Not that I'm aware of.</p> <p>5 Q. What aspects of biology do you think 6 natural selection can explain it?</p> <p>7 A. Oh, I mean, that's the routine tool that 8 we use in the laboratory in terms of genetics and 9 putting selective pressure on organisms and looking 10 for modifications.</p> <p>11 Q. Do you think that natural selection can 12 explain micro evolution?</p> <p>13 A. For sure, no problem.</p> <p>14 Q. How would you -- or how do you 15 distinguish between aspects of biology that natural 16 selection can explain and those that it can't?</p> <p>17 A. Again, it comes back to the question of 18 what are the limits of change of an organism.</p> <p>19 Q. Do you have an opinion whether natural 20 selection and random mutation can produce new genes 21 with new functions?</p> <p>22 A. They can take existing information that 23 can be modified to produce similar, and over time, 24 some different properties. In other words, you can 25 expose an organism to a man made compound that has</p>

21 (Pages 78 to 81)

Page 82	Page 84
<p>1 carbon and nitrogen that has a potential use for 2 energy, okay, and cycling into other components of 3 the cell.</p> <p>4 It may be recalcitrant, you know, so it 5 it has never appeared on earth before. There are 6 organisms that aren't specifically capable of 7 breaking down and utilizing that compound, but over 8 time, if you put stress on the organism, you can 9 develop, modify enzymatic pathways that will evolve 10 and use and break open, say, a chlorinated biphenyl, 11 or something like that. So I have no problem with 12 that.</p> <p>13 Q. How would you define science?</p> <p>14 A. Science is the discipline of accumulating 15 knowledge of the natural world.</p> <p>16 Q. Are you familiar with the National 17 Academy of Science's definition of scientific 18 theory?</p> <p>19 A. Yes.</p> <p>20 Q. Would you know it off the top of your 21 head?</p> <p>22 A. I could paraphrase it. It would be a 23 statement or a set of statements that explain a set 24 of facts or phenomena through, you know, 25 experimentation or observation.</p>	<p>1 review a biology curriculum for a private Christian 2 school and they had a -- I don't know where their 3 curriculum was from, but it was creationist. I 4 said, "Use Ken Miller's book, augment it with Pandas 5 and People if you want a counter-argument. But I 6 have no problem.</p> <p>7 If you read further in that paragraph he 8 says, "Theory are subject to change as new 9 information is gathered and compared to the model of 10 any theoretical explanation."</p> <p>11 That's a history of science, is 12 revolutions in thought. You accumulate more 13 information or you look at it in light of new 14 circumstances and you go back and you modify 15 theories to be consistent with observed fact or 16 experiments.</p> <p>17 Q. Can you tell me what the difference is 18 between a hypothesis and a scientific theory?</p> <p>19 A. Well, they can be used interchangeably, 20 and they are all the time from a working 21 perspective.</p> <p>22 I have a student that will come in and 23 say, "Hey, I have a theory that this gene is 24 participating in knocking out this function in a 25 white blood cell." Fine. You know, that's really a</p>
Page 83	Page 85
<p>1 Q. That seems pretty close to what I have 2 down here, but I will just read you back what I have 3 here, which I believe is the actual definition. It 4 is a quote.</p> <p>5 "A well substantiated explanation of some 6 aspect of the natural world that can incorporate 7 facts, laws, inferences, and tested hypotheses."</p> <p>8 A. Sure.</p> <p>9 Q. Do you accept that as a valid definition 10 of a valid scientific theory?</p> <p>11 A. Yes, I do.</p> <p>12 Q. And under that definition does 13 intelligent design qualify as a scientific theory?</p> <p>14 A. Yes.</p> <p>15 Q. I'm going to read you a definition from a 16 Ken Miller's Biology Book of Science.</p> <p>17 "First, science deals only with the 18 natural world; second, scientists collect and 19 organize information in a careful, orderly way, 20 looking for patterns and connections between events; 21 third, scientists propose explanations that can be 22 tested by examining evidence."</p> <p>23 Would you agree with that definition?</p> <p>24 A. Sure, it's right out of his biology 25 textbook. And in fact, you know, I was asked to</p>	<p>1 hypothesis.</p> <p>2 A hypothesis is an idea that predicts 3 certain outcomes that are testable experimentally, 4 all right? Then once you carry out the experiment 5 or a set of experiments, is it consistent with your 6 original hypothesis? So it can be something as 7 simple as an idea or a conjecture. First, as a 8 theory, which is more formally, you know -- and 9 according to the National Academy is based on well 10 documented experimental evidence that has been 11 accumulated over time and subject to experimental 12 verification.</p> <p>13 Q. And then it is your opinion that 14 intelligent design is a scientific theory; is that 15 correct?</p> <p>16 A. Yes.</p> <p>17 Q. And with reference to the National 18 Academy of Science's definition, can you explain how 19 intelligent design satisfies that definition? Maybe 20 we should go by the components of the definition.</p> <p>21 The first component is a well 22 substantiated explanation. Can you explain how 23 intelligent design theory can be considered a well 24 substantiated explanation?</p> <p>25 A. Looking at the public evidence, okay, in</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 86</p> <p>1 terms of the natural record, can you explain it 2 based on inference to an intelligent designer? It 3 is a new theory and it is going to be modified over 4 time, and this is the way science works. 5 Let me give you an example. Until the 6 1930s the consensus viewpoint in science was that we 7 had a static universe, okay? And then Einstein 8 comes up with his equations and relativity and is 9 bothered by the fact that when you run these 10 equations through, it looks like the universe had a 11 point in time and history where it began. 12 Now, this was contrary to the accepted 13 consensus view of all scientists at the time period 14 and he didn't like the implications, from my 15 understanding of historical science, because of the 16 metaphysics. 17 Then you have independent observations of 18 Hubbell and other astrophysicists that show you have 19 red shifts, you have got galaxies that appear to be 20 moving away, and you have a real monumental change 21 in our understanding of the universe in terms of 22 what was accepted theoretically. And then as new 23 data came in, it took time, it took argument, it 24 took reformulating how we could do experiments to 25 address this inference based on a minimal set of</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 88</p> <p>1 understanding of neo-Darwinism. We are being 2 marginalized as a non-scientific approach just as 3 people had problems with Einstein's predictions or 4 Hubbell's predictions because of the metaphysical 5 implications of how we viewed the universe and our 6 position in it. 7 People object to my position because of 8 the same -- for the same reasons. Nonetheless, the 9 data will drive us in that direction, the science 10 will drive us in that direction. We may be wrong, 11 okay? We are going to have to stand the test of 12 criticism and the dialogue and, you know, we may be 13 wrong, that's a possibility. But I think our model 14 is consistent with the public evidence. 15 Another critical aspect to this debate is 16 that if the other side is wrong in part, and I'm not 17 saying that they are wrong in total, but in part, if 18 there are positions that neo-Darwinism draws or 19 inferences that it draws that are incorrect, that 20 could have an impeding effect on the advancement of 21 science, just like Einstein's reluctance to accept 22 that there was a point time start in the universe. 23 That opened up entire new vistas in terms 24 of looking at the universe if it proposed at that 25 point unforeseen experiments that could be done to</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 87</p> <p>1 data. But it changed our view of the universe, 2 okay? 3 And in the same way I think we are at the 4 stages where we are looking at the natural record 5 and saying, based on inference, well substantiated 6 records from paleontology, from molecular biology, 7 from biochemistry, from genetics, that there is a 8 limitation to our current theory of natural 9 selection; that we infer intelligence. And that's 10 going to contribute to biological systems. 11 It will have an impact. Just because 12 Einstein had a metaphysical problem with the 13 predictions of his equations, and he even modified 14 those equations to remove the fact that the universe 15 had a point in time beginning in history, I think 16 impeded thought, okay? 17 And this is a question that I have in 18 terms of our present state of biology. Intelligent 19 design has been characterized as a religious 20 position, a non-scientific position, because it goes 21 against the current consensus. 22 Now, I think as a scientist there are 23 legitimate claims, legitimate questions, legitimate 24 criticisms that we are bringing out on the table 25 and have to be addressed by our current</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 89</p> <p>1 verify it. 2 So are you getting my point? You are 3 asking me, is intelligent design based on the 4 National Academy of Science's definition of a 5 theory based on a well substantiated explanation. 6 We are at an infancy at this point. It is 7 controversial, it is heretical based on the common 8 consensus. But that's the history of science. 9 Whenever you have a new interpretation it is going 10 to be fought in the public arena. 11 Q. You say it's in its infancy, how do you 12 -- what is the basis for saying it has risen above 13 all of the hypotheses and up to the level of a 14 scientific theory? 15 A. Because we are looking at the natural 16 world and we are seeing information storage systems, 17 coded systems that in any other context we would 18 ascribe an intelligence behind it. You look at the 19 genetic code -- I mentioned Bill Gates is envious of 20 the ability, you know, the mechanism whereby that 21 information is stored. It's the most efficient 22 storage system in the universe. It has true 23 characters by which information is extracted from 24 it. It's not unlike an alphabet, it's not unlike a 25 musical scale, it's not unlike mathematical symbols,</p>

23 (Pages 86 to 89)

Page 90	Page 92
1 okay? It's a true code.	1 historically.
2 Our experience tells us whenever we find	2 Q. Is the idea that science doesn't consider
3 a code there is a coder. In the same context, we	3 supernatural causes as methodological naturalism an
4 look at subcellular machines, a new view of our	4 accurate term for that concept?
5 understanding of the cell that is within the last 40	5 A. Right, if you are only going to -- if you
6 years. We didn't know about the bacterial flagellum	6 are going to define science as only accepting
7 and how sophisticated it was, we didn't know about	7 natural cause and event to explain the phenomenon
8 DNA replication and their profound efficiency and	8 you are studying, fine, if that's your definition of
9 editing functions.	9 science. It may not be the reality or the truth of
10 We have to look at this new data and say	10 the situation.
11 is natural selection up to the task to produce this	11 Q. Do you disagree with the current
12 level of complexity and specification?	12 definition of science that does not -- that's too
13 Put it this way, on the Genome To Life	13 many negatives.
14 web site that was produced by the Department of	14 I think you agree that the current
15 Energy several years ago, they make the statement in	15 definition of science does not consider supernatural
16 the introduction that is to be read by the public	16 causes. Do you disagree that that should be the
17 that, "The molecular machines we find in the	17 correct definition?
18 simplest of organisms produced by evolution dwarf	18 A. It's a qualified disagreement, especially
19 the engineering feats of the twentieth century."	19 in this debate. If the science is pointing you to
20 Natural laws, undirected, unintelligent,	20 an intelligent cause, then you have to go where the
21 un-in-purpose, un-forward looking can produce	21 data leads. If you are limiting your
22 machines more sophisticated than the entire	22 interpretation, your interpretations, or what you
23 community of intelligent design engineers.	23 will accept as interpretations, it has consequences.
24 (Off the record.)	24 And I'm the first person to say we look
25 MR. WHITE: He was going to finish his	25 for natural causes, natural explanations first, all

Page 91	Page 93
1 answer from before.	1 right? But I'm not opposed to looking at the data
2 MR. LUCHENITSER: I'm comfortable with	2 any more than a forensic pathologist is and saying,
3 the answer, I don't need anything more on that.	3 you know, is it a natural death or was this a
4 THE WITNESS: The last bit of the	4 designed death, is this a murder?
5 sentence. So I'll continue with the statement, "The	5 Is natural law sufficient to describe
6 molecular machines in even the simplest of organisms	6 life forms on this planet or not? It's a valid
7 produced by evolution dwarf the sophistication and	7 question. If it is insufficient, then that implies
8 subtlety of machines produced by man, essentially.	8 that there may be an intelligence behind it, or in a
9 I mean, that's a paraphrase.	9 definitional term, a supernatural cause. But I'm
10 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:	10 not saying supernatural in the way that you would
11 Q. Does the science only consider natural	11 imply superstition or a specific god, et cetera. It
12 causes?	12 is just above the natural explanation.
13 A. Not necessarily, okay? You always look	13 Q. Would you agree with the proposition that
14 for natural explanations first. I mean, that is	14 in order for intelligent design theory to be
15 consistent. But I mean, there are sciences that	15 considered valid science; science has to go beyond
16 look for signs of intelligence, whether it is the	16 the concept of methodological naturalism?
17 SETI project, if you are a forensic scientist, if	17 A. It would have to be modified. But again,
18 you are an archeologist, you know? You are looking	18 this is an artificial definition, in my mind. If
19 at natural products and asking is there an	19 you are only going to accept natural explanations,
20 intelligence involved in what you are seeing.	20 then that's all you are going to see, because by
21 Q. Does science ever consider supernatural	21 definition you aren't even going to allow any other
22 causes?	22 explanation into the conversation.
23 A. Under our current definition of science,	23 Q. So in order for intelligent design theory
24 natural methodological science excludes	24 to be valid science, does the definition of science
25 supernatural, but that hasn't been the case	25 have to be broad enough so that science can consider

Page 94	Page 95	Page 96
<p>1 supernatural causes?</p> <p>2 A. Right, I mean, isn't that what is going 3 on in NASA when you have all these radio telescopes 4 pointed out in the universe and asking the pattern 5 of pulsar magnetic radiation, different types of 6 radiation coming at us? Is it all just natural, or 7 is there somebody out there that has intelligence 8 that is trying to communicate with us?</p> <p>9 I mean, that is going beyond, that is 10 looking at the natural data and saying, "Is there an 11 intelligence behind it?" That is legitimate. You 12 are looking for patterns, you are looking for 13 specificity, and it is being used now as part of our 14 scientific methodology.</p> <p>15 Q. But there you are talking about looking 16 for extraterrestrial life, so it still seems that 17 you are looking at natural actors as opposed to the 18 supernatural actor. Now with respect to intelligent 19 design theory, doesn't --</p> <p>20 A. Intelligent design theory doesn't rule 21 out the fact that those natural actors may have a 22 super intelligence that participated in development 23 of life on this planet, okay? And we don't know 24 that they exist so it is supernatural to our 25 experience. We don't know that there are aliens out</p>	<p>1 interpretation of natural phenomena. It has 2 consequences. If you are only going to accept the 3 laws of physics and chemistry, time and chance, as 4 an explanation of life on this planet, how it arose, 5 how it diversified, that could have -- that could be 6 a methodological stricture that has consequences in 7 terms of the progress of science.</p> <p>8 Going back to Einstein's experience, he 9 came up with a radical new interpretation of the 10 universe that had philosophical, religious, 11 metaphysical implications. Whatever you want to 12 call it, he didn't like it, all right? And he 13 essentially fudged his equations to eliminate that 14 interpretation that impeded science.</p> <p>15 All I'm saying is that I think in 16 biological systems we infer, in a consensus 17 viewpoint, that natural cause and effect is 18 sufficient to explain what we see, and I disagree 19 with that. It has the same types of implications 20 that were faced by the big bang theory, and that's a 21 legitimate area of exploration scientifically.</p> <p>22 Q. On page one you say, kind of in the 23 middle of the last full paragraph on the page, you 24 refer to neo-Darwinism as the generally accepted 25 mechanism. So you would agree that evolution is a</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 97</p>
<p>1 there. We don't rule them out, we don't know they 2 haven't visited this planet. So that is, by 3 definition, supernatural, and there are a lot of 4 scientists that agree.</p> <p>5 Francis Crick looked at the common 6 evidence in biology and said life could not arise on 7 this planet de novo, it was seeded by some 8 extraterrestrial source, in formulating his theory 9 of Pan Spermia, all right? Nobel laureate, looking 10 at the evidence, saying that there is some 11 supernatural event in terms of our understanding of 12 natural events on this planet, that solar winds blew 13 in some primitive organism or someone visited this 14 planet and seeded life. I mean, that's pretty far 15 out, but it is one of the hypotheses.</p> <p>16 Q. Let me draw your attention to the top of 17 page 10 of your report, all the way to the top. You 18 say, "The real problem may not be determining the 19 best explanation of the origin of the flagellum. 20 Rather it may be amending the methodological 21 strictures that prevent consideration of the most 22 natural and rational conclusion."</p> <p>23 Can you tell me what you meant by 24 amending the methodological strictures?</p> <p>25 A. In other words, it is limiting our</p>	<p>1 generally accepted theory in the scientific 2 community?</p> <p>3 A. Sure.</p> <p>4 Q. Would you agree that intelligent design 5 theory is not generally accepted by the scientific 6 community?</p> <p>7 Q. Oh, I agree, I agree. Like I said, it is 8 a minority opinion; in some people's minds it is 9 heretical, okay? But again, you can look at the 10 history of science and that's how we progress, by 11 challenging the status quo and holding it up to, you 12 know, an explanatory filter that has got to be 13 consistent with the information as we see it.</p> <p>14 I think it is legitimate debate. That's 15 why we are here. I respect Ken Miller and he is 16 serving a purpose in this debate, you know? He is 17 -- and I am all for it. I enjoy the interaction 18 that we have had in a limited sense.</p> <p>19 That's how science works. You have areas 20 of contention that can be small, they can be large 21 with cosmological implications. But that's how we 22 progress, by keeping each other honest.</p> <p>23 Q. In your report, again I've quoted -- and 24 this is before the beginning of the last paragraph 25 on page one, you state that, "Intelligent design</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 97</p>

25 (Pages 94 to 97)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 98</p> <p>1 theory holds that the deep complexity and clearly 2 evident design in organisms is the result of an 3 intelligent agent."</p> <p>4 Do you consider that to be a testable 5 proposition?</p> <p>6 A. It is as testable as evolutionary theory. 7 Again, if we are looking at – you know, it is an 8 historical science in one aspect. We are going back 9 and looking at the records, we are looking at our 10 present knowledge and seeing if it is consistent 11 with the model that we currently have. This is as 12 much testable as evolution.</p> <p>13 Let me give you an example. One of the 14 evidences for neo-Darwinism is molecular and 15 structural homology, okay? You look at the skeleton 16 in my hand, you look at the skeleton of a bat wing, 17 you look at the skeleton of a whale fin, there is 18 similarity: Same bones, different size structure.</p> <p>19 I have a problem in the sense, though, 20 that it is a self-referential argument. I believe 21 in common decent and therefore organisms should have 22 homologies, and because I find homologies, it 23 therefore proves common decent.</p> <p>24 It doesn't rule out common design, in my 25 mind. Common design is on the table and you would</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 100</p> <p>1 a legitimate explanation.</p> <p>2 Q. Now, let's go to the -- I guess there are 3 bird wings and bat wings as kind of an example in a 4 homologous sense. What was the example you were 5 just using a second ago?</p> <p>6 A. In terms of human skeletal structure for 7 a hand and a bat wing and a whale fin. I mean, they 8 have got similar structures, and therefore you infer 9 that they are related by descent because of 10 homologies at the structural level.</p> <p>11 Q. Does a scientific theory have to be 12 testable?</p> <p>13 A. Again, in terms of evolution, and Ernst 14 Mayer's definition, "Laws and experiments are 15 inappropriate for the explication of events and 16 processes when we are dealing with evolution."</p> <p>17 We are looking at historical records. 18 There are certain aspects that can be testable, but 19 again, there is a lot of inferences and 20 extrapolations that are involved in our current 21 thinking.</p> <p>22 Q. Is it generally accepted in the 23 scientific community that for something to be a 24 scientific theory it has to be testable?</p> <p>25 A. It has to be consistent with a body of</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 99</p> <p>1 make the same predictions.</p> <p>2 Q. Do those various kinds of examples you 3 just gave, do these homologous structures -- do they 4 have identical genetic codes?</p> <p>5 A. Some of them do, some of them don't. And 6 that's another interesting point that Simon Conway 7 Morris brings up in his paper that is included in 8 mine. If you believe in common descent, you would 9 think that organisms that have the same body plan 10 would develop through the same genetic program.</p> <p>11 So there are, to my understanding, 12 invertebrates, such as sea stars, that go through 13 intermediate larval stages that are vastly 14 different. In fact, they weren't even recognized as 15 similar organisms when they are looked at at the 16 larval stage, yet they end up with the same body 17 plan.</p> <p>18 Morris says it looks like evolution is 19 somehow channeled, and that is a problem with an 20 evolutionary scientist in terms of genetics and the 21 phenotype. And if it is channeled, then teleology, 22 purpose, is back on the table.</p> <p>23 That's the prominent -- one of the most 24 prominent evolutionary biologists stating and citing 25 an intelligent design by Denton saying that this is</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 101</p> <p>1 knowledge that explains the phenomenon or the facts 2 that you are addressing.</p> <p>3 Q. Is it not the case that there has to be a 4 way to test this?</p> <p>5 A. There are examples. I mean, Kurt Goedel 6 said that there statements that are true that are 7 unverifiable, you know? And that's a conundrum.</p> <p>8 Q. What are some examples of statements that 9 are scientifically --</p> <p>10 A. I'm not a mathematician and he is a 11 mathematician. But, you know, I would refer you to 12 -- go to Fischer Bach, you know a popular treatise on 13 this phenomenon.</p> <p>14 Q. Does scientific theory have to be 15 falsifiable to be a valid scientific theory?</p> <p>16 A. It is a component that should be 17 incorporated, yes.</p> <p>18 Q. Is there any way to falsify intelligent 19 design theory? Is there any way to falsify that?</p> <p>20 A. You bet, you come up with a phylogenetic 21 history of some of these things that are up in 22 contention and, you know, where you can get genetic 23 information de novo, in a real experiment, not an 24 artificially simulated experiment, and we are going 25 to check.</p>

26 (Pages 98 to 101)

Page 102	Page 104
<p>1 There is a potential that, hey, there is 2 -- the evidence could be overwhelming and we are 3 going to throw the towel in and go home. You bet. 4 The same has to be held on the other side 5 as well. And there are certain concepts of 6 evolutionary theory that I think are unfalsifiable 7 in terms of -- some people, even within the 8 scientific community, have the old adage that a 9 theory that explains everything, explains nothing, 10 okay?</p> <p>11 If you look at the bacterial flagellum, 12 Mike Behe says that it is irreducibly complex, we 13 don't have intermediates. He says you need two 14 microorganisms. We don't have the intermediate 15 stages of the phylogenetic history of that.</p> <p>16 Yet my colleagues, as evolutionists, 17 assume without fact that these are all present, the 18 intermediates, or some presence, is responsible for 19 the appearance of this structure, you know? By 20 definition, because they are only going to accept 21 the natural law, but is that falsifiable?</p> <p>22 Q. Have you conducted any experiments to 23 demonstrate the validity of intelligent design 24 theory?</p> <p>25 A. I think the body of my peer-reviewed</p>	<p>1 intermediate structures to bacterial flagellum. 2 I was willing to concede that they 3 weren't. In fact, when Mike Behe first published 4 his book, I called him up and said, "Whoa," you 5 know, "we are working on stuff that may be a problem 6 here when you are using this as an example."</p> <p>7 Over time, as more work has been done by 8 my lab and other labs, I am unwilling to say that 9 the type III secretory system is an intermediate 10 structure for the bacterial flagellum. But the 11 point is, we are both scientists, we are both 12 looking at the common evidence, we are both drawing 13 conclusions based on that evidence. And my 14 conclusion is that this is a highly efficient 15 machine that has all the hallmarks of a design 16 product, and he says natural law is sufficient to 17 explain it, okay? That's a legitimate argument and 18 I don't see why there is a problem with it.</p> <p>19 Q. If scientists were to demonstrate how 20 natural selection could have produced the flagellum, 21 would that, in your mind, falsify intelligent design 22 theory?</p> <p>23 A. If you can show me the intermediate 24 structures in the phylogenetic history, yes, but in 25 a sense that to me is unfalsifiable because I don't</p>
Page 103	Page 105
<p>1 publications are consistent with an intelligent 2 design interpretation. Again, this isn't -- it is 3 not the accepted interpretation, but I think they 4 are consistent.</p> <p>5 Some of the experiments that I mentioned, 6 both done by other researchers and experiments we 7 have initiated looking at antibiotic resistance, are 8 consistent with some aspects of intelligent design 9 or consistent with what we refer to as the 10 limitations of evolutionary theory.</p> <p>11 Q. These experiments you have conducted you 12 say are consistent, but they don't conclusively 13 prove that intelligent design theory is accurate --</p> <p>14 A. They are scientific -- they are 15 scientific --</p> <p>16 Q. -- or that --</p> <p>17 A. -- sorry, I didn't mean to interrupt.</p> <p>18 They are scientific conclusions based 19 upon the work that, through my interpretation, are 20 counter to, say, a neo-Darwinist. That's where Ken 21 Miller and I come in, we are both looking at the 22 flagellum, we are both asking, can natural selection 23 produce it? We are looking at type III secretory 24 systems. This is what I work on specifically in my 25 research, and whether or not these are true</p>	<p>1 think we have them. It is going to be inferred and 2 -- listen, we all have biases that we bring to the 3 table, you know? And how we are going to interpret 4 things. Mark Twain is quoted as saying, "Don't 5 believe your eyes when your imagination is out of 6 focus."</p> <p>7 You know, we have got a set body of 8 evidence that has been filtered through an allowable 9 set of parameters and new ways of thinking about it 10 are a problem to get through that filter.</p> <p>11 Q. Just a second ago you said in some sense 12 it is unfalsifiable, can you explain what you meant? 13 Did you mean there is no way to actually --</p> <p>14 A. No, I think there is, but I am going to 15 be --</p> <p>16 MR. WHITE: Just don't over-speak him, 17 because the court reporter can't get everything.</p> <p>18 THE WITNESS: Okay, all right.</p> <p>19 It is going to be -- it's going to be 20 difficult. I think, yes, there is -- my view is 21 falsifiable.</p> <p>22 BY MR. LUCHPHNISER:</p> <p>23 Q. It is falsifiable?</p> <p>24 A. Right, for sure. In other words, if you 25 can come up with a mechanism that can produce these</p>

27 (Pages 102 to 105)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 106</p> <p>1 macromolecular machines, you know, then okay. 2 Q. Would you be satisfied by just the 3 demonstration of how the flagellum is produced or 4 would you want a demonstration of how a bunch of 5 different macromolecular flagellum were produced by 6 natural selection? 7 MR. WHITE: Objection, a compound 8 question. The reason I say that, there are two 9 parts to it which advance both questions. 10 THE WITNESS: Right, is one body of 11 evidence sufficient or does it require multiple? 12 You know, it's a speculative hypothetical 13 question. I want to see the data before I make an 14 assessment. 15 But going back to your original question, 16 yes, I think it is falsifiable. 17 Q. A lot of what we talked about is kind of 18 the pace of development of major kinds of life on 19 earth, and I think it is correct that the general 20 consensus is that about four billion years ago first 21 life appeared and complex multi-cellular life might 22 have appeared about 600 million years ago, and then 23 multi-cellular land animals might have appeared 450 24 million years ago. Would you kind of agree with the 25 proposition that the pace of development of more and</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 108</p> <p>1 the motives of any designer. 2 Q. Does the intelligent design theory have 3 any answer to that question? 4 A. No. 5 Q. Do we have any evidence of any 6 extraterrestrial life in the universe? 7 A. Not at this point. 8 Q. Does the intelligent design theory have 9 any opinion as to whether the universe is finite or 10 infinite? 11 A. I think it subscribes to the current 12 cosmological understanding of the universe in terms 13 of it is expanding and there was a point in time 14 where it began. I mean, infinite -- 15 Q. Is it infinite in size or finite? Is 16 there a consensus -- 17 A. That's outside of my expertise. 18 Q. Now, one way to characterize -- or an 19 argument made by intelligent design proponents is 20 that there is an extremely low probability that the 21 living beings we see on earth could have arisen 22 through natural causes? 23 A. For sure, right. 24 Q. Now, do we have any evidence at all as to 25 how frequently life in the universe arises, what the</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 107</p> <p>1 more complex life has accelerated throughout the 2 history of earth? Is that something you generally 3 see as correct based on the -- 4 A. I don't know if I would say accelerated. 5 The appearance of organisms in the fossil record 6 have expanded in terms of their complexity over 7 time. 8 Q. Does that pace of development -- does 9 that support intelligent design theory or does 10 support the scientific theory of evolution? 11 A. It could be interpreted either way. 12 Q. Can you explain how it could support 13 intelligent design theory? 14 A. Well, you have an intelligent agent that 15 could be introducing new life forms at specific 16 points in history. 17 Q. Do you have any idea why it would take 18 the intelligent agent several billion years to go 19 from the simple microscopic life forms to a more 20 complex animal species? 21 A. That's a speculative question, it's like 22 asking why did Beethoven write the Ninth Symphony 23 last instead of first. It's a created object. If 24 intelligent design designed an object, it is a 25 creative process, and I'm not going to speculate on</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 109</p> <p>1 actual frequency of living beings -- complex living 2 beings arise in the universe on any given planet? 3 A. Again, that's outside of my expertise. I 4 mean, I know the Drake equation predicts that there 5 are multiple planets that could support life. There 6 is a group at the University of Washington that has 7 published a book recently called Rare Earth, which 8 Giermo Gonzalez was part of that group who is an 9 intelligent design advocate who had an article on 10 the cover of Scientific American several years ago 11 expounding this view of rare earth hypothesis, that 12 the Drake equation may be wrong in terms of 13 predicting the number of potential planets that 14 could support life. 15 Q. We don't have any actual empirical 16 evidence on how frequently life actually arises in 17 the universe? 18 A. There are conjectures, from my 19 understanding, but that is outside of my expertise. 20 Q. Now, even if one were to accept the 21 proposition that the probability of life arising on 22 earth and developing to its present state through 23 natural causes is incredibly low without other 24 evidence of -- without empirical evidence of how 25 frequently life arises in the universe, how does the</p>

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 110</p> <p>1 first proposition support intelligent design? 2 A. Rephrase the question so I understand 3 what you are asking. In other words, you are 4 talking about probability, low probability for life 5 arising spontaneously in terms of the -- what would 6 we say, the probabilistic resources in the universe, 7 is it consistent?</p> <p>8 Q. Let me try to rephrase it.</p> <p>9 Okay, you take a proposition that the 10 probability of life arising on earth is an extremely 11 small number. Without any evidence that life in the 12 universe, in fact on any given planet, arises more 13 often is a probability number, what is the -- how 14 can you conclude that the low probability indicates 15 that life in fact was intelligent design and didn't 16 just in fact originate through natural causes?</p> <p>17 A. I mean, that's a complicated question. I 18 am going to reply and clarify in my response, if I 19 am addressing the question you are asking.</p> <p>20 But does it --</p> <p>21 MR. WHITE: If you don't understand the 22 question --</p> <p>23 THE WITNESS: I think I understand it, 24 but I'm not sure. In other words, if there is an 25 assigned probability to any event, no matter how</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 112</p> <p>1 that has got to account for the generation of the 2 first organisms. 3 That's in terms of what we know and the 4 probabilities that have been assigned these vary 5 tremendously. A narrow window of time, regardless, 6 everybody agrees. To expand that probabilistic 7 resources available to us, there are people that are 8 proposing there is a fourth law of thermodynamics to 9 get around this problem that there is some 10 organizing principle that can account for generation 11 of information and formation of replicators, or 12 there are infinite universes so that even though it 13 is an extremely low probability in this universe, if 14 there are an infinite number of universes and there 15 is any probability for something to happen, it will 16 happen at some time. It happened here, deal with 17 it, okay?</p> <p>18 But these are speculative. But I think 19 they in part are addressing the problem of this low 20 probability event of life arising.</p> <p>21 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>22 Q. So how do we get from the low probability 23 to the conclusion of intelligent design if these 24 alternative explanations which have not been refuted 25 or falsified are still available? In an infinite</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 111</p> <p>1 small it is, given the size of the universe and the 2 time involved, is that sufficient for that extremely 3 rare event to occur? In other words, are the 4 probabilistic resources available for events in the 5 order of 10 to the minus 128 to happen?</p> <p>6 MR. WHITE: Is that you are asking, Alex?</p> <p>7 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>8 Q. You can go ahead and answer the question 9 the way you've understood it.</p> <p>10 MR. WHITE: Object to the question that 11 it is complex and confusing.</p> <p>12 THE WITNESS: I will put it this way. I 13 think it is recognized that life arising by natural 14 cause on this planet is an extremely rare event. 15 From our current knowledge, it is a singular event. 16 It doesn't rule out that it hasn't happened 17 somewhere else in the universe, but from our 18 understanding that is speculative, okay?</p> <p>19 Because of that extreme low probability, 20 I think there are efforts in the scientific 21 community to expand the probabilistic resources. 22 The age of the universe is 20 billion years old, 23 maybe 12.5, somewhere in there. The age of the 24 earth is 4.5 billion years. The first life arose 25 at 3.8 billion years. So you have got a time window</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 113</p> <p>1 number of universes, then as far as we know this may 2 be the only planet in the numerous universes that 3 even has life, how do you get to intelligent 4 design? COURT REPORTER: You have to 5 speak up.</p> <p>6 MR. LUCHENITSER: I'm sorry --</p> <p>7 MR. WHITE: Will you repeat that? I 8 didn't hear most of it.</p> <p>9 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>10 Q. It was without having evidence of 11 extraterrestrial life, how do you get to intelligent 12 design? The only data point you have is the earth 13 and life on earth and you have no evidence of life 14 elsewhere and all you have is the low probability of 15 life on earth, how can you get to the conclusion of 16 intelligent design?</p> <p>17 MR. WHITE: Object, it's an 18 unintelligible question.</p> <p>19 THE WITNESS: I understand what you are 20 saying, but, you know, that's speculation. To me 21 it's outside of my expertise.</p> <p>22 But what it could imply that would be 23 consistent with intelligent design is that the 24 universe is a created phenomenon; that the designer 25 could be outside of the universe and the author of</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 114</p> <p>1 these laws whereby the universe acts. 2 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 3 Q. Let me switch gears here. 4 Before you spoke of your experience from 5 where you used to be an atheist or agnostic and then 6 you became a Christian. Can you tell me what 7 denomination you ascribe to? 8 A. I'm not a member of any church or 9 denomination. 10 Q. Do you attend any church? 11 A. I do. 12 Q. Is it an evangelical church? 13 A. I think it could probably be defined as 14 evangelical. 15 Q. And would you consider yourself an 16 evangelical Christian? 17 A. Evangelical in the sense that a Christian 18 is directed to account for their beliefs in the 19 public arena. 20 MR. WHITE: I will object to all these 21 questions as irrelevant. 22 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 23 Q. Does neo-Darwinian evolutionary theory 24 conflict with your personal religious beliefs? 25 MR. WHITE: Object as to relevance.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 116</p> <p>1 There were people that objected on this 2 campus that said, "Under no circumstances should a 3 creationist be allowed to teach a biology class in a 4 public institution." Okay? To me that's viewpoint 5 discrimination. 6 So I am very cognizant of where my 7 personal beliefs lie and the responsibility I have 8 to make them known if I am teaching a course to my 9 students. I don't find the same rules being applied 10 to my colleagues. 11 Q. Let me ask you, at the top of page 10 of 12 your report, I guess you are quoting your pre-year 13 2004 paper, you say, "Rather it may be amending the 14 methodological strictures that prevent consideration 15 of most natural and rational conclusion" -- 16 MR. WHITE: Hold on a second, we've lost 17 the page. 18 THE WITNESS: Right here. 19 MR. WHITE: Are we talking about Exhibit 20 I here? Page 10. 21 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 22 Q. "The most natural and rational 23 conclusion, albeit one with discomfiting 24 philosophical implications." And what is the 25 conclusion you are referring to there?</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 115</p> <p>1 THE WITNESS: Parts of it, I think. Let 2 me give you an example. 3 I am very sensitive to the difference 4 between a lectern and a pulpit. I teach in a public 5 university, I respect my students. What I hold as 6 personal belief I don't present to students as part 7 of the scientific knowledge that I am imparting to 8 them. 9 Now, if they ask me personal opinions, I 10 will say, "I have an opinion, we can talk about it 11 outside of class," and it impacts on these 12 philosophical questions. But I don't look at it as 13 my responsibility to give my world view to anybody 14 unless I am asked. 15 Contrast to that, I can give you numerous 16 examples on this campus this year where my 17 colleagues have stood up in front of a class and 18 said, "No true scientist believes in a creator," 19 making absolute statements that are loaded 20 metaphysically. 21 We had a situation where there was an 22 instructor hired by this department by an 23 evolutionist to teach her class because she was 24 buying her teaching requirement out with grant 25 money, and she hired a creationist.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 117</p> <p>1 A. There is a designer. 2 Q. What are the discomfiting philosophical 3 implications? 4 A. You know, that that has metaphysical 5 implications in terms of how you conduct yourself. 6 Let me give you an example from my own 7 personal experience. Now I have colleagues that I 8 am very good friends with in my department and they 9 know where I stand on this and they disagree with 10 me, okay? And in our conversations I will ask them, 11 okay, "Do you agree that nature has the appearance 12 of design?" 13 They say, "Yes." 14 "Are you willing to consider that it may 15 be real design or do you just think it is apparent 16 design, as does Dawkins?" 17 "Well, it's apparent. We can explain it 18 by evolution and natural selection." 19 Okay. But they know the problems of 20 evolution because we are all molecular biologists 21 and we know the complexity and specification that we 22 are dealing with. 23 I will ask the question, "But don't you 24 think this is a legitimate question?" 25 And they say, "Yeah, okay."</p>

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 118</p> <p>1 "Then why are you so against my position 2 of even considering that there is a designer?" 3 The almost unanimous response to that 4 question is generally two fold: "If there is a 5 designer, I don't want to know who he is because 6 there is so much evil in the universe," or, "if 7 there is a designer I don't want to know who they 8 are," because, you know, him or she or it is, 9 "because it has implications in how I lead my life." 10 And I can say to them, "Fine, I can 11 respect your opinion. But recognize that your 12 difference with me in addressing these questions is 13 not scientific, it is metaphysical, you have a 14 philosophical -- you have a religious problem with 15 the implications, the discomfiting philosophical 16 implications of my position and you dismiss them on 17 that basis, not totally on the scientific argument." 18 And they agree. They will stop and say, 19 "Okay, you are right." 20 Q. Let me ask you about the bacterium that 21 causes the bubonic plague, is that called the 22 Yersinia pestis bacterium? 23 A. Yes. 24 Q. And is it your opinion that this plague 25 bacterium was designed?</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 120</p> <p>1 sick, it is food borne. It is like getting 2 salmonella or pathogenic E. coli, you know? It's a 3 double-bucket disease. You are going to be 4 uncomfortable for a few days, but it's not going to 5 kill you. 6 Compared to Yersinia pestis, that is in 7 the major leagues in terms of slate-wipers in 8 disease. 200 million people is nothing to blink at. 9 The primary difference between these 10 organisms is loss of information, over 13 percent of 11 the chromosome of Yersinia pestis compared to 12 Yersinia tuberculosis. It is due to mutations, loss 13 of information. 14 That to me is amazing. It is amazing to 15 me that for my field, in molecular pathogenesis, all 16 virulence factors, toxins, anti-host factors, are 17 all mobile genetic elements. They are out of 18 context. They have been acquired through 19 introduction of a plasmid through a virus, through a 20 transposon. They are not part of the aboriginal 21 design of the organism, they are not necessary for 22 the existence of that organism. 23 So although it is early, you know -- you 24 can see genetic change in these organisms, it 25 doesn't look like it was necessarily part of the</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 119</p> <p>1 A. That's a loaded question, in the sense 2 that if I am going to be consistent with ascribing 3 the flagellum to a designer with inference to 4 design, that it is a beautiful rotary engine, and I 5 find it to be an irreducibly complex machine, this 6 nano syringe, that is the most deadly molecular 7 machine that we know of. I mean all gram-negative 8 organisms have them. The Yersinia pestis alone has 9 killed over 200 million people, it is going to be 10 designed, too, okay? 11 So you have the problem of theodicy of 12 evil, is the designer the author of evil as well as 13 good design and bad design? That's a philosophical 14 problem. 15 What I find interesting, however, is that 16 there is a paper in the proceedings of the National 17 Academy of Sciences this past year that compared the 18 genomic sequence of Yersinia pestis with a closely 19 related organism Yersinia cito tuberculosis. So 20 they are like 99 percent similar at the DNA level. 21 In fact, the differentiation into different species 22 is arbitrary, one is probably a sub species of the 23 other. 24 No, Yersinia cito tuberculosis is a mild 25 pathogen, it doesn't kill anybody, it will make you</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 121</p> <p>1 aboriginal design. 2 That is a loaded, you know, interesting 3 philosophical observation that deals with the 4 question of whether you are going to hold the 5 designer responsible for evil. 6 And this is an age-old problem. This 7 plagued Darwin, from my understanding, that in part 8 what is motivating him to, you know, be looking at 9 an alternative explanation for life as the natural 10 evil that he sees. 11 He talks about a dipteran wasp laying its 12 eggs into a worm and that these eggs, when they 13 develop, eat the worm from the inside out. I mean, 14 that is pretty raw. 15 So the problem of evil is recognized, and 16 it has been recognized for centuries. There are 17 explanations that I think are consist. I'm not a 18 theologian, I'm not a philosopher, but these are 19 dealt with -- I wouldn't deal with them in a 20 scientific context. 21 So you see what I am saying? So I think 22 I understand where you are going in terms of -- 23 Q. Do you have an explanation of these, I 24 guess, evil designs from the perspective of 25 intelligent design theory?</p>

31 (Pages 118 to 121)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 122</p> <p>1 A. Well, I mean, we are going to have to 2 deal with them, and they are interesting questions. 3 But again, that's more of a philosophical outgrowth 4 of intelligent design theory. All people, I think, 5 regardless have this -- you can be like Dawkins who 6 says evil is really just a perception from our 7 perspective as humans, we expect to see it from a 8 materialistic view point. There is no real evil. 9 That's a human invention.</p> <p>10 Q. Do you have a personal opinion as to why 11 these apparently evil bacterium were designed or 12 appeared?</p> <p>13 MR. WHITE: Objection, relevancy.</p> <p>14 THE WITNESS: Yes, I mean, it is totally 15 conjecture and it is something that I am formulating 16 now and I don't want to be quoted on it because I am 17 changing. My ideas, as I think about these, are 18 evolving, so I don't have a set answer for that. 19 But I recognize it as a legitimate question.</p> <p>20 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>21 Q. Is it correct that you are the faculty 22 advisor for Campus Crusade for Christ at the 23 University of Idaho?</p> <p>24 A. I am.</p> <p>25 MR. LUCHENITSER: Let's mark this as</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 124</p> <p>1 heaven and on earth. Go therefore and make 2 disciples of all the nations baptizing them in the 3 name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, 4 teaching them to observe all that I command of you 5 and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the 6 age."</p> <p>7 Do you agree with that goal of the Campus 8 Crusade for Christ?</p> <p>9 A. I haven't seen this document before. But 10 as a Christian, it is part of the tenant of my 11 faith.</p> <p>12 Q. Do you perform your work related to 13 intelligent design theory in order to advance that 14 goal?</p> <p>15 A. No.</p> <p>16 Q. Does your work relating to intelligent 17 design theory in any way relate to that goal?</p> <p>18 A. It is consistent with it in terms of an 19 explanation of world views. But again, I don't feel 20 it is my responsibility in the classroom to make 21 those views evident. I don't preach this to 22 students, I don't require a common belief in my 23 laboratory as a requisite for any student that I am 24 working with. I respect their individual beliefs. 25 I am very cognizant of this power</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 123</p> <p>1 Exhibit 2. 2 (Deposition Exhibit No. 2 marked for 3 identification.)</p> <p>4 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>5 Q. Can you tell me what Campus Crusade for 6 Christ is?</p> <p>7 A. It's a student organization of 8 Christians.</p> <p>9 Q. If you could, please, we have marked as 10 Exhibit 2 a document called Student Organizations, 11 Campus Crusade for Christ. If you could flip 12 through the last page of Exhibit 2 where it says, 13 "About the crusade." Let me ask you to -- let's 14 focus on the second paragraph of that page. It 15 says --</p> <p>16 MR. WHITE: Just a general objection to 17 no foundation showing authenticity.</p> <p>18 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>19 Q. Okay, it says under About Crusade, 20 "Working together with these fellow believers, our 21 goal is to help give every man, woman and child in 22 the entire world an opportunity to find new life in 23 Jesus Christ. Our commitment is based on the Lord's 24 command:</p> <p>25 "All authority has been given to me in</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 125</p> <p>1 differential that I have with my students. So if 2 you are asking, do I evangelize students in my 3 laboratory and in my classrooms? I do not, unless I 4 am specifically asked my view point, then I offer it 5 as my opinion.</p> <p>6 Q. Do you give speeches or presentations 7 about intelligent design?</p> <p>8 A. I do.</p> <p>9 Q. And about how many of those speeches and 10 presentations have you given?</p> <p>11 A. I don't --</p> <p>12 MR. WHITE: Object, time frame.</p> <p>13 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>14 Q. Ever.</p> <p>15 A. I don't have an accurate record. I would 16 say it is probably less than 15 over the last 10 17 years.</p> <p>18 Q. About how often do you give these 19 speeches and presentations?</p> <p>20 A. It varies, you know. If you averaged it 21 out, maybe once every six months.</p> <p>22 Q. And have most of the speeches or 23 presentations you have given about intelligent 24 design theory been presented either at religious 25 institutions or at programs sponsored or organized</p>

32 (Pages 122 to 125)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 126</p> <p>1 by religious institutions?</p> <p>2 A. It has been a combination of both. I 3 mean, at Calvin College I participated in a 4 symposium there that was design and its critics, and 5 there were people from all sides of this issue for 6 and against, I mean, looking at a lot of these 7 issues that we have raised.</p> <p>8 Q. Would you say most of the presentations 9 you have given about intelligent design have been at 10 programs sponsored by religious institutions or most 11 of them, or would that not be the case? Or is it 12 about half and half?</p> <p>13 A. I don't know. I mean, like I said, I 14 don't keep track of that.</p> <p>15 Q. Did you give a presentation about 16 intelligent design theory at a retreat sponsored by 17 the Evangelical Free Church of Pullman on or about 18 April 1st of this year?</p> <p>19 A. I did.</p> <p>20 MR. LUCHENITSER: Let me ask you some 21 questions about an exhibit relating to this 22 presentation. This is going to be Exhibit 3.</p> <p>23 (Deposition Exhibit No. 3 marked for 24 identification.)</p> <p>25 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 128</p> <p>1 Q. So you would agree with that?</p> <p>2 A. I think --</p> <p>3 MR. WHITE: Objection as to relevance.</p> <p>4 THE WITNESS: Right, I mean, this is in 5 the context of a religious meeting and these are 6 religious views that I think are consistent but not 7 implicit in the intelligent design</p> <p>8 Position. In other words, if I were 9 asked to give a talk on intelligent design at this 10 university, I'm not going to bring in biblical 11 positions. I think the evidence stands on its own.</p> <p>12 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>13 Q. Let me ask you if you agree with the next 14 paragraph. I'll try to read it quickly.</p> <p>15 "Secular materialism has permeated our 16 American culture under the guise of science through 17 the vehicle of evolution. Evolutionary Theory, or 18 Darwinism, has too long been a stumbling block for 19 some when the opportunity for faith arose. It has 20 produced that cloud of doubt leading some to leave 21 the faith and hindered others from sharing the faith 22 more vigorously."</p> <p>23 Is that a statement you would agree with?</p> <p>24 A. No, I didn't write it and I wasn't part 25 of this advertisement.</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 127</p> <p>1 Q. What has been marked as Exhibit 3 is a 2 document entitled Church Events, Creation Testifies 3 to Her Creator. Would you agree with the statement, 4 the bold statement right below the photograph?</p> <p>5 MR. WHITE: Just a general objection to 6 lack of foundation and authenticity on this 7 document.</p> <p>8 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>9 Q. Would you agree with the statement: 10 "God's word teaches us that the heavens declare the 11 glory of God," "And they do"?</p> <p>12 A. I didn't write it. I am not even sure 13 who wrote it. The quote I agree with. I don't 14 really have a problem with it.</p> <p>15 Q. And would you agree with the next 16 paragraph which says, "From her witness alone, 17 creation teaches us about God's eternity, His power, 18 and His God-qualities, which set Him apart from all 19 created things"?</p> <p>20 A. Where is this?</p> <p>21 Q. This is right below that, it's the first 22 paragraph of the text that says, "Creation teaches 23 us that people are absolutely left without excuse 24 for not recognizing God"?</p> <p>25 A. It's right out of Romans 1, Verse 18.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 129</p> <p>1 MR. WHITE: Just the same objections I 2 have made, including hearsay.</p> <p>3 MR. LUCHENITSER: did you want to make a 4 standing objection to all these kinds of questions?</p> <p>5 MR. WHITE: Yes.</p> <p>6 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>7 Q. Would you agree or disagree with the 8 statement that, "Evolutionary Theory destructively 9 impacts us," including because, "It reaches into our 10 courts of law and ousts the Creator's laws"?</p> <p>11 A. Not to the degree that that is stated. I 12 would look at that as inflammatory.</p> <p>13 Q. To what degree would you not agree with 14 it?</p> <p>15 A. I say that Darwinism, materialism has 16 implications as a world view in terms of how we 17 conduct ourselves individually and as a society, and 18 some of it negative, some of it positive, okay?</p> <p>19 I'd like to clarify that, too, in terms 20 of my participation in this event. You know, I 21 essentially covered the material that is in my 22 expert report. I mean, that's the level of it, 23 okay, making the same observations in terms of a 24 scientist, what I observe and inferences that I 25 make.</p>

33 (Pages 126 to 129)

Page 130	Page 132
<p>1 Q. Now, if you would flip to the next page, 2 your talk was called: Nanomotors & the Genius of 3 God. 4 A. I didn't come up with that title. 5 Q. But was it one of the things where you 6 were trying to present to the people at the event, 7 that nanomotors show the genius God? 8 MR. WHITE: I didn't hear the question. 9 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 10 Q. Was it one of the things you were trying 11 to present to the people who attended the event, was 12 one thing you were trying to present that nanomotors 13 show the genius of God? 14 A. Right, in terms of the context of that. 15 If I were talking about this in, say, a secular 16 environment, you know -- again, I didn't come up 17 with this title, it was assigned. I had told the 18 program director, whatever, that I was going to be 19 talking about macromolecular machines as evidence 20 for design. And they thought -- I think the 21 thinking was that's a complicated title to the lay 22 person and they pre-formulated it and there it was. 23 To me that is -- personally I wouldn't 24 have chosen that because it's risky. I mean, this 25 is on the internet, my colleagues are looking at</p>	<p>1 Science and Christianity in Conflict, Trinity 2 Church, October 13, 2002. 3 MR. WHITE: Object to lack of foundation, 4 authenticity, hearsay. 5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 6 Q. Was this a program where you had a 7 presentation or was this a document -- 8 A. I'm trying to think -- 9 Q. -- that was meant to cover the entire 10 thing? 11 A. I don't know, I don't know, I don't 12 recall. I don't know where Trinity Church is. I 13 know Jed. But I haven't talked to them at a meeting 14 with Howard Berg. I think it is part of a 15 curriculum that Jed was teaching at the University 16 of California at Berkley. 17 Q. There is a section on page two, a section 18 nine, "Conclusion: Real Christians Love a 19 Challenge," "A. Scott Minnich's yop cannon." 20 A. I have a cartoon that I had -- one of the 21 students in the lab actually drew that I used in 22 seminars when we were trying to explain the 23 similarity between the flagellum and a type III 24 secretory system. At the time, this was in the 25 early nineties, and this is a radical hypothesis.</p>
Page 131	Page 133
<p>1 this and going, you know -- 2 Q. And I get to ask you about it in your 3 deposition. 4 A. Right, exactly. But to clarify this, 5 going back to the point that is even recognized in 6 the Department of Energy's web page, "The molecular 7 machines we find in the simplest of organisms dwarf 8 the engineering feats of the twentieth century, the 9 industrial age." 10 Geniuses make engines, motors, so I don't 11 think it is out of line to ascribe the things that 12 are beyond our present intelligence to produce are 13 the product of a genius, okay? 14 MR. LUCHENITSER: Thank you. Let me go 15 on to the next one, Exhibit 4..... 16 (Deposition Exhibit No. 4 marked for 17 identification.) 18 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 19 Q. Did you give a presentation about 20 intelligent design at Trinity Church on October 13, 21 2002? 22 A. Whoa, where is Trinity Church? 23 Q. It's in the upper right-hand corner of 24 the exhibit. For the record, this document has been 25 marked as Exhibit 4, it's a document entitled:</p>	<p>1 that we were saying these two are related systems. 2 Yops are -- stand for Yersinia outer 3 proteins. These are the toxins that are injected 4 into mammalian cells responsible for the disease of 5 plague. And so we looked at the basal body of the 6 flagellum as a cannon propelling or secreting these 7 toxins. 8 But, no, I don't know where this came 9 from. 10 Q. Yes, that doesn't seem like a 11 presentation that you did. 12 A. Yes. 13 MR. LUCHENITSER: Let's mark this one as 14 Exhibit 5, please. 15 (Deposition Exhibit No. 5 marked for 16 identification.) 17 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 18 Q. Did you present -- 19 A. I did. 20 Q. -- at the Veritas Forum? 21 A. I did. 22 Q. "From The Big Bang Biology." We have 23 marked as Exhibit 5 a document relating to this 24 presentation. 25 And on the first page it is titled --</p>

34 (Pages 130 to 133)

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 134</p> <p>1 well, first let me ask you, were one or more of the 2 organizations that sponsored this -- or co-sponsored 3 this event a religious organization? 4 A. I don't have any knowledge that it was 5 other than the sponsors that are listed here. 6 Q. Do you know if any of those are religious 7 organizations? 8 A. American Scientific Affiliation, I'm not 9 a member of, is a group of scientists that are 10 Christian, some of them very adversely against 11 intelligent design. Templeton Foundation, I know a 12 little bit about that in terms of sponsoring -- 13 Q. Who are the Templeton Foundation? 14 A. I don't know, I mean -- I don't know. 15 And Veritas Forum, I'm not sure what their history 16 is or who is involved in that. 17 Q. And the title of this event is: "From 18 The Big Bang To Biology, does the latest evidence 19 point back to God?" Was one of the points in your 20 presentation at this event that the evidence that 21 you have studied does point back to God? 22 A. I made it clear that the evidence was 23 consistent with a designer, I don't think I used the 24 word God. I may have, I don't know, I don't recall, 25 I mean, I don't know.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 136</p> <p>1 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 2 Q. We were talking about irreducible 3 complexity when left off before, and we go to pages 4 six through seven of your report, the last full 5 sentence on page six of your report. It will say, 6 "Irreducible complexity, a term coined by Michael 7 Behe in his scientific argument for intelligent 8 design, essentially states that molecular machines 9 are comprised of a core set of components essential 10 for function of that machine. If that component is 11 removed from the machine, there is a resulting 12 overall loss of function." 13 Is that your definition of irreducible 14 complexity? 15 A. Yes, that's my interpretation of my 16 exposition. 17 Q. So is it correct, in order to be 18 irreducibly complex, all that is necessary is that a 19 system needs to have multiple required parts? 20 A. I mean, essentially, yes, that you have 21 got a consortium of elements, all of which play an 22 essential function in the machine. 23 Q. Now, on page seven there is a big long 24 paragraph in the middle of the page, and kind of in 25 the middle of the paragraph you say, "The common</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 135</p> <p>1 Q. And did you also give a presentation 2 about intelligent design at an event called, 3 "Fingerprints of God, intelligent design points to 4 our creator," which was hosted by the Fourth 5 Memorial Church on or about April 9, 2005? 6 A. I did. 7 Q. Are there certain core concepts that 8 provide the scientific basis for the intelligent 9 design theory? 10 MR. WHITE: You were trailing off on the 11 question a whole bunch, I'm sorry. 12 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 13 Q. Are there certain core concepts that 14 provide the scientific basis for intelligent design 15 theory? 16 A. Yes. 17 Q. What would they be? 18 A. I mean, they would be the concept of 19 irreducible complexity and aspects of information 20 theory. It would be critical analysis of current 21 Darwinian explanations, so there is that aspect of 22 it. 23 (Off the record.) 24 (Lunch recess taken.) 25 MR. LUCHENITSER: We're back in session.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 137</p> <p>1 feature for similar efforts on each cellular machine 2 is that all of the components, or a core subset of 3 movable parts, are essential for function; in short, 4 the systems are irreducibly complex by definition." 5 A. Can I qualify that? 6 Q. Okay. 7 A. Or expound on that? Irreducible 8 complexity, the principle of irreducible complexity 9 is essential in modern day molecular genetics. We 10 can't look at an organism's genome -- you know, when 11 we started out this process and determined which 12 genes were involved in what process in the cell, all 13 of the genes, the 50 genes -- there is some 14 variation, depending upon organism, are identified 15 by mutation, okay? 16 So if I am working with E. coli and I 17 want to know all the genes involved in making a 18 flagellum, I don't have a blueprint for the 19 organism, all I know is that it can swim. I 20 mutantize a population of cells and I screen for 21 ones that have lost the ability to swim, okay? And 22 then I map all those genes, determine which ones are 23 redundant, you know, mutations in the same gene, how 24 many unique genes are involved, that identifies all 25 of the components in that process that either</p>

35 (Pages 134 to 137)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 138</p> <p>1 destroy motility, abrogate motility, or attenuate 2 it, they can't change direction, or whatever. 3 So this is -- I mean, this is the bread 4 and butter of molecular geneticists in modern-day 5 biology. This goes back to Beadle and Tatum, 6 historically, the whole concept where they were able 7 to mutantize Neurospora, bread mold, and then play 8 these organisms out, the survivors, and then pick 9 them onto what we call minimal media and identify 10 nutritional mutations, organisms that were --mutants 11 that were conditionally lethal and identify what 12 those genes meant. One gene, one enzyme at that 13 point. Now, it is a little more volatile at this 14 point.</p> <p>15 But that was a key fundamental discovery 16 in genetics, that mutations produce phenotypic 17 differences that we can identify and that they are 18 specific to that function in general. Now, you can 19 grow pleiotropic genes, regulatory genes that have 20 multiple function.</p> <p>21 But by and large -- I mean, each 22 component of the bacterial flagellum has been 23 identified because it is irreducibly complex, each 24 gene was identified by mutation.</p> <p>25 I want to make this point, too, because</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 140</p> <p>1 all the time or it just sits there and spins 2 randomly. 3 Q. Is your definition of what is irreducibly 4 complex different from Mr. Behe's or is it the same? 5 A. No, I think we agree. 6 Q. Because it sounds like you are saying 7 that something can be irreducibly complex even if 8 you remove a few components and it still works as 9 long as there is a core subset of components that 10 doesn't work, I mean, can't be removed. 11 A. I mean, look at it in this context. You 12 can have a stripped-down engine in a car, all right? 13 And you can identify the essential parts by removing 14 a drive shaft or a piston rod or a coil plug and say 15 that's equivalent. Now, if you put an air 16 conditioner on there with a vacuum pump that is an 17 accessory, the engine still works but you are losing 18 part of its overall system. 19 So it's not -- you can still drive a car 20 without an air conditioner, all right? So there are 21 other components that play a role, maybe, in the 22 overall function of a machine but are not necessary 23 for its survivability. 24 Q. Now, by your definition wouldn't all life 25 forms be irreducibly complex because they would have</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 139</p> <p>1 Ken Miller, I think, skews this a little bit. So if 2 you look at the flagellum, it has 50 components, all 3 of which are required. In the type III secretory 4 system there are a base core of 10 proteins that are 5 similar between these, but all of those are 6 essential for the function of the type III systems. 7 It is not saying that you can't have the 8 same proteins involved in another machine, okay? 9 But it is saying that those two, based on their core 10 composite elements, are identified because of 11 irreducible complexity. 12 Q. Can something be irreducibly complex if 13 it has some components that are not necessary for it 14 to function but a core subset of movable parts is 15 necessary for function? 16 A. Right, like I said, there are some genes 17 involved in motility of bacteria that contribute to 18 chemotaxis in the sense that they are involved in 19 monitoring the environment and feeding those signals 20 back to the flagellum to change its direction which 21 will change the direction the organism is going. 22 You knock out one of those genes, the organism can 23 still swim, but it can't respond to chemical 24 gradients, it can't make -- it is stuck in a default 25 position. It is either swimming straight forward</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 141</p> <p>1 some core components that are necessary for 2 function? 3 A. You bet, I would say if organisms were 4 not irreducibly complex, we would know very little 5 about them. Because again, this is the way 6 molecular genetics works by mutational analysis. 7 You knock out, you do a general mutagenesis -- our 8 job, the hard part of our job is developing a 9 screen or a selection to look only at the functions. 10 we are interested in and against all the other 11 mutations that are occurring in the cell. 12 Q. Now, maybe I was wrong, but it seemed 13 that Mr. Behe's definition of irreducibly complexity 14 was that all components had to be required, not just 15 the core components. Is that his definition, or am 16 I misinterpreting what his definition is? 17 A. I haven't talked to Mike for a couple of 18 years, so I'm not in terms of, you know, if he has 19 modified his or if I am modifying mine. 20 But I will make the example, a specific 21 example. When I looked at the bacterial flagellum, 22 all of the physical components of the engine itself 23 we know are essential, it is irreducibly complex by 24 definition. 25 Now, there are genes in segments of</p>

Page 142	Page 144
<p>1 transcription units that are involved in chemotaxis 2 or sensory perception. You can make a mutation in 3 those, the organism can swim so it is not affecting 4 motor, but it doesn't swim intelligently. In other 5 words, it can't change direction. If there is a 6 food source in this corner, it doesn't know it and 7 migrate in that direction. Or if there is a 8 repellent, something that is harmful, it can't 9 backtrack away from it down a chemical gradient. 10 Does that make sense?</p> <p>11 Q. Now, your views on irreducible 12 complexity, are they based on Mr. Behe's work or are 13 they based on any independent research or 14 theoretical work of your own?</p> <p>15 A. On my own experience. I mean, this is 16 what I do in the laboratory. I want to know how 17 something works, I don't have the blueprints, I've 18 got to break it down and figure out who the actors 19 are in that play, okay?</p> <p>20 Q. Would you attribute the concept to Mr. 21 Behe?</p> <p>22 A. I think he coined the term, but to a 23 molecular geneticist it resonates, I think with all 24 of us. I knew exactly what he was talking about 25 when I read the first few pages in his book,</p>	<p>1 inoculation?" If they can, they can swim. If they 2 can't, they are stuck there, just a point of 3 inoculum of cells.</p> <p>4 Q. Now, is the concept of irreducible 5 complexity an essential component of intelligent 6 design theory?</p> <p>7 A. Yes, because natural selection says that 8 over time you can have mutations that can fashion 9 these sophisticated engines, all right? And you can 10 co-opt and modify existing genes in an organism and 11 build these machines. What it requires is that each 12 step of the way is conferring some selective 13 advantage, but we know in the end product that if 14 you don't have one component, there is no function 15 and therefore nothing to select, nothing for nature 16 to select.</p> <p>17 Let me describe it this way. <i>Yersinia</i> 18 <i>pestis</i>, the agent of bubonic plague, has a type III 19 secretory system. It also has all of the genes 20 required to build a flagellum. But it has been 21 described, since it was first isolated by Yersin at 22 the turn of the last century, as a non-motile 23 organism. It is one of the classification 24 requirements to identify <i>Yersinia pestis</i> from 25 related organisms.</p>
Page 143	Page 145
<p>1 Darwin's Black Box.</p> <p>2 Q. How do you determine what a core 3 component of a system is?</p> <p>4 A. By looking at all the essential genes 5 that are involved. If I went into my office and 6 came back with a textbook, Molecular Biology of 7 <i>Escherichia coli</i> and <i>Salmonella typhimurium</i>, I could 8 give you a genetic map of all the 4,000 plus genes, 9 and in there there is a list of all the flagellar 10 genes. Okay? All the genes involved in flagellar 11 biosynthesis, and next to it it will list what we 12 call a phenotype, what is the effect if you make a 13 mutation of this gene.</p> <p>14 It says those that can't swim, can't 15 swim, loss of chemotaxis, can't build a basal body, 16 can't build a drive shaft. Do you see what I am 17 saying? All the components are determined because 18 if you mutantize that gene you loose function and it 19 is easy to screen.</p> <p>20 You know, I can take you in the lab and 21 show you, you know, we have a soft auger, that we 22 call it, and Petri dishes, and we can take a mutant 23 colony from a plate, stick it in that soft auger and 24 put in the incubator, come back in 12 hours and say, 25 "Can those organisms radiate out from the center of</p>	<p>1 Now, we hypothesize that the flagellum in 2 the type III secretory system initially had 3 overlapping functions, that was the simplest 4 explanation.</p> <p>5 It also said that because <i>Yersinia pestis</i> 6 doesn't have a flagellum, you know, it doesn't swim, 7 our hypothesis stated it has to have the genes for 8 the flagellum, part of which has to be expressed for 9 our yop cannon to function. That's a testable 10 hypothesis. You do the sequence analysis and the 11 genes are there.</p> <p>12 Now, we know there are separate parallel 13 systems, and we can get into that later, which I 14 discuss in that paper that Steve and I wrote. But 15 here is a situation where you have got 50 genes in a 16 chromosome required to build a flagellum. It has a 17 mutation in the master control switch.</p> <p>18 So in essence, you know, from a Darwinian 19 perspective, you have now all of the 50 genes 20 required for function, all you need is a mutation to 21 give you the -- excuse me, you have 49 out of 50, 22 let's say hypothetically, you are just waiting for 23 number 50 to come on.</p> <p>24 What happens, though, in actuality, when 25 I go through the entire genome of <i>Yersinia pestis</i>,</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 146</p> <p>1 the other 49 genes, you know, a number of them have 2 been debilitated by deletions, by insertions, 3 because there is no function associated with them, 4 they are silent in the chromosome and they are lost 5 by mutation, never to be recovered again.</p> <p>6 Now, in one sense a biologist will argue, 7 well, that makes sense. If you don't use it, you 8 lose it, all right? On the other sense, you have to 9 have this gradual accumulation of this information 10 that is ultimately going to cobble itself into a 11 pretty sophisticated machine.</p> <p>12 You can't have it both ways, all right? 13 It's a conundrum. If you don't have a function 14 there is nothing to select.</p> <p>15 Q. So is it your position that irreducibly 16 complex systems cannot evolve?</p> <p>17 A. That's a qualified position. I think 18 that you can get gene duplication. You may even be 19 able to co-opt certain parts of one motor. I think 20 we could look at some of these molecular machines as 21 composite machines. There are, say, multiple 22 components that can have different uses under 23 different environments -- environmental conditions.</p> <p>24 Q. So some irreducibly complex systems can 25 evolve and some can't, is that what I am hearing?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 148</p> <p>1 experience, and just what other things have been 2 published about these systems, I am more reticent to 3 say that's the case. I haven't ruled it out. 4 But I think Ken wants to look in -- he 5 says, "Well, here is an intermediate structure, case 6 closed, go home," you know, "what are you arguing 7 about?"</p> <p>8 I work on these systems. I think the 9 data raises a lot more questions that are difficult 10 for an evolutionist to assimilate than just simply 11 saying this the intermediate that we are all looking 12 for.</p> <p>13 Q. So is it the case that you believe that 14 some irreducibly complex systems can evolve?</p> <p>15 A. I don't think we have hardcore evidence. 16 I haven't ruled it out and that's as far as I go.</p> <p>17 Q. So what is the utility of the concept of 18 irreducible complexity to intelligent design theory 19 if irreducibly complexity doesn't rule out the 20 possibility that something evolved?</p> <p>21 A. I think our experience shows that these 22 machines are integrated, essential for functions of 23 the cell. There are multiple components. I have a 24 hard time envisioning what the intermediate steps 25 are.</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 147</p> <p>1 A. It's a fine distinction. The flagellum 2 is an example of irreducible complexity by 3 definition. The type III secretory system shares 4 the components, all right? There are at least 30 5 components of the flagellum that are unique to the 6 flagellum that we don't find in other organisms and 7 the type III secretory system, which shares 10 8 similar proteins, there are about 20 that are unique 9 to the type III system.</p> <p>10 But the phylogenetic analysis shows that 11 the more complex flagellum arose first from which, 12 you know, the type III secretory system seems to 13 have a sub function compared to the flagellum. It 14 can secrete proteins like the flagellum, but it is 15 not apparently spinning, it is not propelling the 16 cell, it is just a nano syringe.</p> <p>17 Did the type III system evolve from the 18 flagellum? That's going from more complex to a more 19 simplistic structure. Possibly I was willing to 20 entertain that in the beginning as these results 21 were being dissected.</p> <p>22 In fact, I gave a talk at a meeting when 23 Ken Miller was there asking the question, is type 24 III secretory -- are the type III secretory systems 25 co-opted from the flagellum. Now, from my further</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 149</p> <p>1 Now, Dawkins would say I suffer from 2 credulity, you know. I say I am a scientist and I'm 3 supposed to be skeptical, you know? I don't -- you 4 haven't shown me the necessary intermediates, so at 5 this point the simplest explanation is I know these 6 are irreducibly complex by my own experience in the 7 laboratory. You know, that's where the data sits 8 now. I think that's what the data is driving.</p> <p>9 Q. Are you familiar with the term 10 exaptation?</p> <p>11 A. Exaptation? I mean, I have heard it, but 12 I'm trying to place it in terms of the context. 13 That you are accepting something out of something 14 else, is that --</p> <p>15 Q. What is your understanding of what it 16 means?</p> <p>17 A. I don't know, I don't want to -- I would 18 have to look it up. I think it is probably similar 19 to co-option.</p> <p>20 Q. Anyway, what is your response to the 21 suggestion that irreducibly complex systems can 22 evolve because of a less complex version of the 23 system might have had a different function when it 24 had less proteins?</p> <p>25 MR. WHITE: Objection. Did you say can</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 150</p> <p>1 or can't? 2 MR. LUCHENITSER: Can. 3 MR. WHITE: C-a-n? 4 MR. LUCHENITSER: Yes. 5 THE WITNESS: Say the question again, 6 please. 7 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 8 Q. Why can't an irreducibly complex system 9 evolve through the process whereby a version of the 10 system that had less proteins or parts serve a 11 different function, and then there was some mutation 12 or mutations leading to the current system that 13 serves the current function? 14 A. I'm not going to rule it out, okay? I 15 think there is probably examples that will come up 16 for specific systems and cells. I mean, organisms 17 change over time. This involves change in function 18 of motors. But looking at overall in terms of 19 advancement and complexity from a bacterium to 20 eukaryote to a mammal, that is a gross extrapolation 21 of the information we now have available to us. 22 And that's what my colleagues, as neo- 23 Darwinists, accept. I have a problem with it. They 24 don't have the evidence to go that far. 25 Q. Would you acknowledge that exaptation or</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 152</p> <p>1 A. You can get optimization for certain 2 functions if you maintain selective pressure driving 3 it in that direction, but our experience is pretty 4 minimal at this point. I think it's at the 5 enzymatic level, it's at the -- and you can use it. 6 So again, these are micro-evolutionary 7 changes that I'm not arguing with. 8 Q. Can the parts of a system evolve so that 9 parts that initially could have performed a function 10 without the presence of other parts co-adapt so that 11 they become dependent on each other? 12 A. I think that's speculation at this point. 13 It is necessary for an evolutionary perspective. I 14 have seen arguments in the literature purporting 15 that. I'm trying to think, I don't have specific 16 examples in hand, but I think they are still open to 17 question. 18 Q. Is it also possible that an irreducibly 19 complex system can evolve from a larger system that 20 was not irreducibly complex? 21 A. I'm trying to think in terms of -- you 22 know, can you give me an example? So you have a 23 non-irreducibly complex system spinning off of an 24 irreducibly complex system? 25 Q. Right, a system that has got a bunch of</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 151</p> <p>1 co-option is part of the explanation of how 2 organisms have developed through natural selection? 3 MR. WHITE: Objection, he said he didn't 4 know what exaptation was. 5 THE WITNESS: Can we use co-option? 6 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 7 Q. Yes, the same thing. 8 A. It's possible, but -- 9 MR. WHITE: Just so I understand, so 10 exaptation and co-option you are saying is the same 11 thing? 12 MR. LUCHENITSER: Yes, the same thing. 13 THE WITNESS: But qualify it. 14 Co-option, as we understand it in our natural 15 experience, is a very intelligent process, okay? 16 You know, and the hallmark of a good machine is it 17 has multiple uses, so this could be built into the 18 design as well. 19 If I design a vacuum pump, I can put it 20 on my vacuum cleaner, I can put it on my automobile 21 engine, I can put it on other systems, you know? 22 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 23 Q. Could an irreducibly complex system 24 evolve from a system that previously functioned but 25 just did not function as well?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 153</p> <p>1 parts that weren't necessary and then you lose the 2 unnecessary parts and you are left with the 3 irreducibly complex part? 4 A. I don't know offhand any examples of 5 that. 6 Q. And what about the possibility of a 7 mutation that causes a change in how proteins in a 8 biological system are deployed and affect several 9 proteins at once? For example, a change in a gene 10 that governs how several other genes express 11 themselves, could that lead to the evolution of an 12 irreducibly complex system? 13 A. Again, I'm not sure, without talking 14 about specific systems, what you were getting at. I 15 mean, you have a homeotic gene mutation in a fruit 16 fly and suddenly, you know, you build legs where 17 antenna used to be? Yes, that can happen. 18 Q. Are you aware of any evidence that 19 irreducibly complex systems have in fact evolved in 20 modern -- in recent history? 21 A. No. 22 MR. LUCHENITSER: Let's mark this as 23 whatever the next one is here. 24 (Deposition Exhibit No. 6 marked for 25 identification.)</p>

39 (Pages 150 to 153)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 154</p> <p>1 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>2 Q. Okay, we are marking as Exhibit 6, we are 3 marking an article by Glen Johnson, Rakesh Jain, and 4 Jim Spain, Origins of the 2,4-Dinitrotoluene 5 Pathway. I have you ever seen this article before?</p> <p>6 A. I haven't, but I am aware -- I mean, 7 there is a group here at the University of Idaho 8 that is doing similar work on TNT degradation. This 9 is done at an air force base, so the military had an 10 express interest in degrading, you know, explosive 11 compounds or their intermediates.</p> <p>12 But this is a biochemical pathway, all 13 right? Mike Behe talks about biochemical pathways 14 as not being irreducibly complex. This essentially 15 -- not having read this paper, but familiar with 16 this type of work from my colleagues here at the 17 University of Idaho, is that you can take organisms 18 that have the ability to, say, de-nitrophenyl Benzene 19 rings or de-nitrophenyl similar compounds, and you can 20 run them through a selective process where this is 21 the only nitrogen and carbon source and modify those 22 enzymes so that now they recognize this compound, 23 which they didn't originally, or very poorly, and 24 develop an organism now that can utilize TNT or DNT 25 as the sole nitrogen and carbon source, or as a</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 156</p> <p>1 distinction here. I think that it is an important 2 distinction.</p> <p>3 Q. Are the bacteria themselves irreducibly 4 complex?</p> <p>5 A. They are comprised of irreducibly complex 6 components. I mean, they are functions of 7 macromolecular machines, all of which, as an 8 integrate unit, are required.</p> <p>9 Q. Doesn't the degeneration pathway have 10 multiple required proteins?</p> <p>11 A. Right.</p> <p>12 Q. So I'm still not understanding why it is 13 not an irreducibly complex system.</p> <p>14 A. It is not, you know, the -- I know what I 15 want to say, but in terms of articulating it to a 16 non-scientist -- let me cogitate on that for a 17 minute in the sense that, again, not everything in 18 the cell is irreducibly complex, and biochemical 19 pathways are one of the things that we have agreed 20 have the ability to evolve over time and be modified 21 in terms of especially catabolism/anabolism, all 22 right?</p> <p>23 If you feed a group of organisms a single 24 carbon and nitrogen source, you are going to select 25 for organisms that can use that, if that's the only</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 155</p> <p>1 major nitrogen/carbon source. But I wouldn't say 2 that's an example of irreducible complexity.</p> <p>3 Q. Why not?</p> <p>4 A. It's just micro adaptation, taking 5 information, enzyme systems that have similar 6 function and putting them under stress so that you 7 are selecting for changes, mutations that modify the 8 enzymatic reactive center so that it is more liberal 9 in the sense that it can recognize this compound 10 instead of the ones that it originally was involved 11 in modifying by catalysis.</p> <p>12 Q. But isn't the new system not irreducibly 13 complex and don't you need both the bacteria and the 14 DNT to have this biochemical system?</p> <p>15 A. Again, I would say biochemical pathways 16 are not the same as a molecular machine. These are 17 a series of enzymes that are involved in 18 modification of substrates. And if you remove one 19 part, you can still have some of those enzymes in 20 the pathway functioning in other enzymatic 21 modifications.</p> <p>22 This is a good example of 23 micro-adaptation. I don't think that this is, by 24 definition, irreducibly complex by Mike Behe's 25 example. So, you know, I mean there is a</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 157</p> <p>1 thing available, based on the information that they 2 have in other systems.</p> <p>3 MR. WHITE: Who highlighted all of this 4 on Exhibit 6?</p> <p>5 MR. LUCHENITSER: I did.</p> <p>6 THE WITNESS: Can I try and clarify this 7 again?</p> <p>8 MR. WHITE: What you are dealing now is 9 Exhibit 6.</p> <p>10 THE WITNESS: Right, Origins of the 11 2,4-Dinitrotoluene Pathway.</p> <p>12 This is an example of micro adaptation. 13 These organisms possess a series of enzymes that can 14 make -- and, you know, in this case I haven't read 15 this paper in full -- four modifications to open up 16 this benzene ring, which is a very, you know, 17 difficult process for organisms to do.</p> <p>18 The enzymes involved in this process are 19 modifications of the information that is already 20 there where -- I am speculating, that enzyme one has 21 a normal function in a different pathway normally. 22 But you put that organism under selective pressure, 23 you can modify that information and get a new 24 function for those enzymes. This is micro 25 adaptation. No one is arguing that point.</p>

40 (Pages 154 to 157)

Page 158	Page 160
<p>1 It is -- you know, we have already got a 2 cell that is information rich that is producing a 3 number of enzymes that are involved in different 4 processes, some of which may be involved in an 5 unrelated biochemical pathway, say for tryptophan 6 regulation, another one that is involved in a 7 different function, and under selective pressure you 8 can get all of these participating in a novel 9 pathway based on modification of their regulation. 10 But these were all present initially. 11 You've got point mutations that are expressing them 12 under different contexts, and, you know, you get a 13 new function in terms of expanding the substrates 14 this organism can live on. I don't have any problem 15 with that.</p> <p>16 (Deposition Exhibit No. 7 marked for 17 identification.)</p> <p>18 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>19 Q. Can you tell me how you determine whether 20 something is irreducibly complex?</p> <p>21 A. Again, in terms of -- maybe this is a 22 good way to look at it.</p> <p>23 With the bacterial flagellum I remove one 24 part, one gene, mutate one gene, you lose function. 25 All of the other components are dedicated to that</p>	<p>1 various proteins or enzymes in the flagellum that 2 can serve different functions in different kinds of 3 cells? 4 A. No, there can be other machines that 5 employ similar proteins for that similar function. 6 But they are, by definition -- by Mike Behe's 7 definition, those are irreducibly complex even if 8 they have the same component. 9 Look, you pull out your cell phone and 10 you remove a transistor your cell phone doesn't 11 work. You go to a computer, you remove the exact 12 same transistor out of it, you lose function on your 13 computer. 14 Q. But you can use a transistor for 15 something else? 16 A. But you can use the transistor for -- you 17 employee it in different functions on designed 18 systems and, you know -- 19 Q. So is a cell phone irreducibly complex? 20 A. Do you want to do the experiment? Hand 21 me yours, let's find out. 22 Yes, I'm sure there are components on 23 there that are necessary. I mean, you could still 24 operate it maybe without the screen. But you pull 25 out your battery or transistor or relays on there</p>

Page 159	Page 161
<p>1 system and they are rendered useless. In this 2 system you remove one enzyme, but you've got the 3 other set of enzymes that can be used in other 4 metabolic processes.</p> <p>5 Okay, so you are not completely 6 destroying the system. You know, there are -- 7 enzymes have, by definition, substrate specificity 8 that can be narrow or broad and they can still 9 function in the cell.</p> <p>10 Q. So the enzymes can be used to perform a 11 different function other than the function that the 12 system performs?</p> <p>13 A. Under the conditions that you are making 14 your assay. If you give this organism 15 dinitrotoluene as a sole carbon and nitrogen source 16 and you throw out one of these genes, then you have 17 knocked out the ability of that organism to grow 18 under those conditions. But if you supply some 19 other carbon source that is maybe a little bit 20 different from this, you only need three out of the 21 four enzymes, the system still works.</p> <p>22 Whereas the bacterial flagellum, you 23 know, we know that that's what their dedicated 24 function is in terms of a rotary engine.</p> <p>25 Q. But now is it correct that there are</p>	<p>1 and it is not functioning. 2 Q. Let me just make sure I get this 3 straight. If a component of those systems can have 4 a function in a different system, is the first 5 system irreducibly complex? If you have system A 6 and -- 7 A. Sure, that's what I am saying. If the 8 trans -- you find the same transistor with the same 9 serial number that is made by the same company and 10 two different systems, they are essential for those 11 functions, right? It doesn't mean that the green 12 board from your computer evolved into the little 13 chip board in your cell phone. 14 Q. Now, let's get back to figuring out 15 whether some of these are irreducibly complex or 16 not. How do you determine what the proper system to 17 look at is? And let me give you an example with 18 respect to the flagellum, how do you decide whether 19 you should be looking at the entire bacterium or 20 just the flagellum? How do you define what the 21 system is? 22 A. By mutational analysis, you make 23 mutations, you screen for organisms that have lost 24 the ability to swim and you identify how many genes 25 are involved, and you can say this essential core of</p>

Page 162

1 genes coding for this essential core of proteins
 2 make this rotary engine. If I remove a drive shaft,
 3 it doesn't work, if I remove a u-joint, it doesn't
 4 work, if I remove the propeller, it doesn't work, if
 5 I remove the stator, it doesn't work, if I remove
 6 the rotor, it doesn't work, if I remove the battery,
 7 it doesn't work.

8 Q. But how did you decide whether to look at
 9 the entire bacterium or just the flagellum in the
 10 first place?

11 A. Because I am interested in the flagellum
 12 biosynthesis. I mean, the whole organism is pretty
 13 complex. Yes, I can make you mutations and identify
 14 a core set of essential genes, you know, that are
 15 essential to that organism, but that's tricky stuff.
 16 You have to get temperature sensitive mutants or
 17 partial diploids to allow that analysis.

18 In other words, DNA replication is
 19 essential for the existence of an organism, right?
 20 Transcription is essential, translation is
 21 essential. All of those have been identified by
 22 mutational analysis and then identifying how many
 23 components are involved in those molecular machines.

24 Q. How do you determine -- when you are
 25 looking at the system, how do you determine what the

Page 164

1 decision as to whether the part should be considered
 2 to be the proteins or each specific gene?
 3 A. Okay, again, that's somewhat a redundant
 4 question. It is a mutational approach, or you can
 5 use a biochemical approach as well. You can purify
 6 these structures, which is, you know, possible, and
 7 dissect it in terms of -- if I have a good
 8 biochemical purification scheme where I can purify a
 9 flagellum away from the rest of the cell, then I can
 10 disrupt that and ask how many proteins are present,
 11 that's one approach, that's a biochemical approach.

12 Or I can use a molecular genetic approach
 13 and mutantize a population of cells, expose them
 14 to ultraviolet light, expose them to some
 15 carcinogenic compound that causes mutations, hit
 16 them with a transposon and collect survivors on a
 17 Petri dish and then pick them individually into a
 18 soft agar, and then ask, "Can you swim or not?"

19 I can, say, isolate 4,000 mutants that
 20 now cannot swim and then I start mapping those by
 21 genetic techniques to where they lie in the
 22 chromosome and then differentiate how many are
 23 redundant mutations in the same gene, how many
 24 different genes are involved. That's how you do it.

25 So you reduce -- you are looking at a

Page 163

1 limits of the system are? And again, for example,
 2 with respect to the flagellum, what if you have
 3 particular proteins that function both inside and
 4 outside the flagellar system?

5 A. Well, you look for pleotrophic effects,
 6 many-fold effects. Now, there was a gene that I
 7 have worked on extensively that is referred to as
 8 Fl.HDC, that's a master control switch. All the
 9 early experiments, it was identified because you
 10 knock it out, you don't get any expression of
 11 flagellar genes.

12 When we have available, you know,
 13 micro-array analysis, we can look at the global
 14 effect a mutation has and find that it is also
 15 regulating multiple -- at least 30 other
 16 non-flagellar operons in the cell. I have done that
 17 work myself, as well as colleagues at the University
 18 of Illinois.

19 That is a regulatory gene that is
 20 involved in the regulation of multiple systems in
 21 the cell, we call it a global regulator.

22 Q. And now how do you -- in trying to figure
 23 out whether something is irreducibly complex or not,
 24 how do you determine what the parts are? Again,
 25 with respect to the flagellum, how do you make the

Page 165

1 large number of mutations that have the same outward
 2 expression, they can't swim, map those genes and
 3 find out how many different positions there are on
 4 the chromosome and then determine how many genes are
 5 essential for building a flagellum.

6 Then you go on to intermediate stages of
 7 the flagellum and say if I knocked out the u-joint,
 8 I know biochemically how many components are there,
 9 I look at mutations of one gene and ask, you know,
 10 how many components does the cell assemble at that
 11 point and which ones are missing. And I can look at
 12 what we call epistasis, what genes are required to
 13 get to this point, to get to this point. Is that
 14 making sense?

15 Q. You are explaining how you figure out
 16 whether something is irreducibly complex, but I'm
 17 not sure how you first made the decision as to what
 18 system you look at, what the limits of the system
 19 are, and what should be considered the parts. For
 20 example, why do you look at proteins as opposed to
 21 the individual molecules or larger parts?

22 A. This is all boiler plate standard --
 23 biochemistry standard molecular genetics. There is
 24 a genetic approach to these problems, there is a
 25 biochemical approach to these problems, you can

42 (Pages 162 to 165)

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 166</p> <p>1 combine both to get to the answer. 2 You are asking the question, how do you 3 determine all the component parts of the flagellum? 4 I mean, that's a valid question, I am really 5 interested in that, a lot of people are. It has all 6 been assembled by reverse engineering, by reverse 7 genetics. Make a mutation, find out what you 8 screwed up.</p> <p>9 You know, have you got a drive shaft, 10 have you got your stators, you have got your 11 u-joints, et cetera, and find out which is missing 12 or which parts are missing.</p> <p>13 Q. Are there any animal species that you 14 believe are irreducibly complex?</p> <p>15 A. All right, I mean --</p> <p>16 Q. Are humans irreducibly complex?</p> <p>17 A. Do you want to do that experiment?</p> <p>18 Q. I wouldn't want to have it done to 19 anybody here.</p> <p>20 A. All right, yes, I think we have essential 21 components that if you remove them, you know, it is 22 going to have a profound effect on your health and 23 well being.</p> <p>24 But there are parts that aren't 25 essential. I mean, you can look at the eye in terms</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 168</p> <p>1 strong selection for pathogenic organisms to lose 2 flagellum biosynthesis.</p> <p>3 Q. Let me just try and see if I can 4 understand what the utility of irreducible 5 complexity is -- of the concept of irreducible 6 complexity is to the intelligent design theory. It 7 seems like you are not saying that if something is 8 irreducibly complex that that necessarily means that 9 it was intelligently designed; is that correct?</p> <p>10 A. I think you can infer intelligent design. 11 I think you are misinterpreting what I am saying or 12 maybe not understanding these ideas, so I have a 13 hard time following your train of thought or your 14 question, where you are going with this.</p> <p>15 Because again, go back to the flagellum. 16 It is a machine that is -- what?</p> <p>17 Q. I'm going to interrupt you. It seems 18 like you are saying --</p> <p>19 MR. WHITE: Let him finish what he was 20 saying.</p> <p>21 THE WITNESS: You were just giving me an 22 odd look and --</p> <p>23 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>24 Q. I was confused. It sounds like you are 25 saying all living systems are irreducibly complex?</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 167</p> <p>1 of its function as, you know, irreducibly complex as 2 a camera lens, but is it essential for the human as 3 a whole? No, you can live without your eyes.</p> <p>4 Q. So it sounds like what it comes down to 5 is anything that has essential components is 6 irreducibly complex?</p> <p>7 A. By definition, to perform that function, 8 there is a core set of proteins required, that if 9 you remove one, you lose function, okay? And 10 therefore, you can identify each component that 11 plays a role in that function for that specific 12 machine or system that we are talking about.</p> <p>13 Q. And does every living system have 14 essential components?</p> <p>15 A. You bet.</p> <p>16 Q. And so I am getting a little lost as to 17 what the utility of the irreducible complexity is. 18 If every living system has essential components and 19 every living system is therefore irreducibly 20 complex, then does that mean no living system at all 21 can evolve?</p> <p>22 A. No, no, it is not saying that. The 23 flagellum is an irreducibly complex machine but it 24 is not essential for the life of a bacterium to a 25 adapt to changing environments. In fact, there is a</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 169</p> <p>1 A. No, that's what you are saying, I'm not 2 saying that. Or you are trying to get me to say 3 that for some reason.</p> <p>4 MR. WHITE: Why don't you ask the 5 professor what he is saying, if you are having a 6 hard time.</p> <p>7 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>8 Q. Okay, you are saying all -- anything that 9 has essential components is irreducibly complex?</p> <p>10 A. Right.</p> <p>11 Q. And all living systems have essential 12 components.</p> <p>13 A. For specific functions, not all of which 14 may be essential for the life of that organism. A 15 bacterium can live fine without a flagellum, okay?</p> <p>16 Q. So you are not saying all living systems 17 are irreducibly complex?</p> <p>18 MR. WHITE: Objection as misstating prior 19 testimony and confusing everything.</p> <p>20 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>21 Q. So it is not your opinion that all living 22 systems are irreducibly complex?</p> <p>23 MR. WHITE: Objection.</p> <p>24 THE WITNESS: All organisms have 25 irreducible complex components, all right? You are</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 170</p> <p>1 dependent upon -- your cells are dependent on DNA 2 replication which involves a macromolecular machine 3 that transcribes your DNA, all right? If you remove 4 one component of that apparatus you are dead, okay? 5 So I don't know why you want to broaden 6 that and -- but, yes, by definition there are 7 irreducibly complex macromolecular machines in all 8 living organisms from the simplest to the most 9 complex, but I'm not saying they are all essential 10 for the organism to live. They are essential for 11 the functions that they are designed to carry out. 12 Q. Is it correct that you claim that the 13 bacterial flagellum is irreducibly complex? 14 A. Right. 15 Q. Is there a particular strain of bacterium 16 that you are referring to when you claim that the 17 flagellum is irreducibly complex? 18 A. I think the gold standard in this is E. 19 coli and salmonella and Caulobacter crescentus, but I 20 want to qualify that in the sense that there are 21 different structural components of different 22 bacterium. You know, if you look at a gram-positive 23 organism compared to a gram-negative organism, like 24 E. coli and salmonella, they don't have an outer 25 membrane, gram-positive organisms don't have an</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 172</p> <p>1 which these organisms live, and I don't have a 2 problem with that. But if you remove the sodium 3 pump from vibrial it is screwed, just like you 4 remove the proton pump from E. coli. 5 Q. When you say that the flagellum is 6 irreducibly complex -- well, first let me ask you, 7 how many proteins are there in the flagellum 8 principle? You say E. coli is the best example you 9 want to use, how many proteins are there in that 10 flagellum? 11 A. In terms of the structural components 12 there are about 30. In terms of when you expand 13 that to include the chemotaxis sensory transduction 14 system and the regulatory genes, it requires about 15 50. 16 Q. So is it 50 total or 30? 50 if you 17 include the regulatory. 18 A. Fifty with the regulatory and the hard 19 wiring to a sensory perception system that is 20 monitoring the chemotaxis system. 21 Q. And 30 if you don't include those? 22 A. Right, just the core flagellum. 23 Q. Now, is it your claim that removing any 24 one of the 50 proteins will keep the flagellum from 25 working at all or is just that some proteins that</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 171</p> <p>1 outer membrane so they don't require the O-ring in 2 that structure as part of the -- what is the word I 3 want, anchoring of the structure in the cell. Okay. 4 So there are modifications from organisms 5 in terms of their structural constraints from one 6 group to another. 7 Q. How many different strains of bacteria 8 that have flagella are there? 9 A. Nobody knows. 10 Q. Is it hundreds, thousands? 11 A. Thousands, right. 12 Q. Have you studied each and every strain's 13 flagellum to ascertain whether it is irreducibly 14 complex or not? 15 A. Nobody has. 16 Q. So is it possible that there are some 17 strains of bacteria there have flagella that are not 18 irreducibly complex? 19 A. I think for that organism, under the 20 conditions that are irreducibly complex, you would 21 apply the same criteria to identify the players. 22 There are marine organisms in the genus vibrial that 23 instead of running a proton motive force run a 24 sodium motive force, and that implies that you have 25 differing constituent parts for the environments in</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 173</p> <p>1 can be removed and the flagellum wouldn't work as 2 well? 3 A. The 30 core elements that make up the 4 structure are essential, we know that by mutagenic 5 analysis. As I mentioned before, if you knock out a 6 chemotaxis protein, you can still have an engine 7 that will spin, it may not be able to reverse 8 direction so it has lost its sensory perception 9 mechanism. 10 If I take out your eyes you can still 11 walk. You may walk across a street in traffic and 12 that can be a problem, but you can still walk. So 13 that's what I am saying. 14 When you knock out chemotaxis, you knock 15 out your sensory perception, and the organism is at 16 risk in terms of being able to monitor its 17 environment in making decisions in terms of there is 18 a food source over there and I want to go in that 19 direction, you know? There is a repellent over 20 here, I want to move away from it. 21 Q. So there are some proteins you can 22 remove from the flagellum and it will work but it 23 just won't work as well, is that what it comes down 24 to? 25 A. These are involved in a hard-wired system</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 174</p> <p>1 that is driving the flagellum in terms of, you know, 2 making decisions based on the environment. 3 As I said before, there are irreducible 4 complexity, you knock out a component, you either -- 5 if you remove one component, you lose function or 6 you attenuate that function.</p> <p>7 Q. By attenuating, you mean impair? 8 A. Right, right.</p> <p>9 Q. Are you aware of any scientific articles, 10 any articles published in the scientific literature 11 that have a contradictory claim that the flagellum 12 is irreducibly complex?</p> <p>13 A. Yes, Ken Miller and I disagree on that.</p> <p>14 MR. LUCHENITSER: Let me have you mark 15 this.</p> <p>16 (Off the record.)</p> <p>17 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>18 Q. Before we get to that, the one that is 19 marked as Exhibit 7, let me just ask you, have you 20 ever seen this article before?</p> <p>21 A. Yes. Not the specific one, but, yes, 22 it's the one Tonegawa won the Nobel prize for.</p> <p>23 Q. You say you have read this article?</p> <p>24 A. I don't know if I have read this specific 25 one. I have read reviews on this. I'm not an</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 176</p> <p>1 basic principle that Tonegawa worked out was looking 2 at the question: If I immunize a mouse with foreign 3 materials, they can mount a repertoire of over, you 4 know, 10 million different antibodies. These are 5 all proteins, they are all different, they have the 6 potential to be different, and our thinking at the 7 time was one gene, one enzyme, one protein, where is 8 that information coming from? Because we are 9 thinking that one gene codes for one, in a sense, 10 antibody, well, this exceeds the genetic capacity of 11 these organisms.</p> <p>12 So it was a real paradox in biology in 13 terms of explaining this. And what Tonegawa showed 14 was that you have cassettes of DNA that are involved 15 in antibody synthesis, you have differential gene 16 splicing that can give you different reading frames 17 for different amino acid sequences, and that B cells 18 can undergo a higher rate of somatic mutation than 19 normal cells.</p> <p>20 All of these contribute to generating the 21 variation that we find in antibody systems. You 22 have this built-in genetic scrambler that is 23 producing variant amino acid sequences in specific 24 sites in these proteins that can then recombine in 25 different sequences with heavy chain, light chain,</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 175</p> <p>1 immunologist, but in general I know the system that 2 he is talking about.</p> <p>3 Q. And this system he is talking about, is 4 that an irreducibly complex system? Just for the 5 record, we are looking at Exhibit 7, an article by 6 Sakano, Huppi, et al., called: Sequences at the 7 somatic recombination sites of immunoglobulin light- 5 chain genes.</p> <p>9 MR. WHITE: And I'll object as he hasn't 10 seen this article before.</p> <p>11 THE WITNESS: Yes, I mean, I don't want 12 to box myself in, because that's a very broad 13 question. Are you saying is the immune system 14 irreducibly complex? Is immunoglobulin biosynthesis 15 irreducibly complex? Are B-cells irreducibly 16 complex? Are the recombination sites involved in 17 cassette shuffling of the variable sites of 18 antibodies irreducibly complex? I would speculate 19 there is a core of genes in this system that are.</p> <p>20 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>21 Q. Do you know whether anybody has explained 22 how that core of genes could have evolved?</p> <p>23 A. Again, I'm not an immunologist. I am 24 familiar with this in the sense of, this was a 25 conundrum for years in immunology. I mean, the</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 177</p> <p>1 constant regions.</p> <p>2 MR. LUCHENITSER: Let's mark this article 3 here as the next exhibit. (Deposition Exhibit No. 8 marked for identification.) (Recess taken.)</p> <p>7 MR. LUCHENITSER: Back on the record.</p> <p>8 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>9 Q. We are looking at Exhibit 8, it's an 10 article by Robert Macnab, and it is called: How 11 Bacteria Assemble Flagella. And was Mr. Macnab 12 considered one of the top researchers in the 13 flagellum field?</p> <p>14 A. You bet, he was at Yale University, I 15 knew him.</p> <p>16 Q. Have you read this article before?</p> <p>17 A. I don't know if I read this specific one. I probably read parts of it, but I have a good understanding of this in terms of my own work.</p> <p>20 Q. If you could, flip to page 82 which is where I have the tab marked Table 1. Can you -- I believe there is a list of about 34 proteins, can you tell me which of the proteins are required parts in which ones are not?</p> <p>25 MR. WHITE: Required parts of what?</p>

Page 178	Page 180
<p>1 MR. LUCHENITSER: Of the flagellum.</p> <p>2 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>3 Q. Can you just say which ones you think are</p> <p>4 not required?</p> <p>5 A. Well, all of these are -- it doesn't have</p> <p>6 chemotaxis proteins in here. All of these are</p> <p>7 required for flagellum function, okay? Some of them</p> <p>8 are involved in protein export in terms of these</p> <p>9 type III systems. These are the channels for which</p> <p>10 these proteins are exported.</p> <p>11 But, yes, if you make a mutation in any</p> <p>12 one of these genes, they have been identified by</p> <p>13 loss of function.</p> <p>14 Q. You are saying each one of these 34 or so</p> <p>15 proteins is required?</p> <p>16 A. Right, for optimum assembly. I mean, you</p> <p>17 could look at a negative regulator FliII. If you</p> <p>18 lose that, then you may have deregulation of some</p> <p>19 components.</p> <p>20 Q. What was that one called?</p> <p>21 A. FliH. Chaperones FliJ, you can still get</p> <p>22 export. Without a chaperone it is just not as</p> <p>23 efficient.</p> <p>24 Q. Now, are any of these parts missing from</p> <p>25 some bacteria?</p>	<p>1 bet. Is there an FlgH counterpart in a</p> <p>2 gram-positive organism that lacks an outer membrane?</p> <p>3 No, there is not.</p> <p>4 Q. And for the moment, let's see, on the</p> <p>5 page of your report, nine --</p> <p>6 A. Page nine of what?</p> <p>7 Q. Of your report, Exhibit 1. You say that</p> <p>8 -- somewhere in there you say that of the 30</p> <p>9 proteins or so that are found in the flagellum that</p> <p>10 are not found in the type III secretion system, none</p> <p>11 of those 30 proteins are present in any other living</p> <p>12 system.</p> <p>13 A. Other than bacteria.</p> <p>14 Q. Yes, at the beginning of the second</p> <p>15 paragraph on page nine. First sentence,</p> <p>16 "Additionally, the other 30 proteins in the</p> <p>17 flagellum motor that are not present in the TTSS are</p> <p>18 unique to the motor or are not found any other</p> <p>19 living system."</p> <p>20 A. Okay.</p> <p>21 Q. So are you aware of anything that makes a</p> <p>22 claim to the contrary?</p> <p>23 A. Not at this point.</p> <p>24 Q. Are you aware of any scientific</p> <p>25 literature that describes or explains that there are</p>
Page 179	Page 181
<p>1 A. Sure, we talked about it before,</p> <p>2 gram-positive bacteria don't have an outer membrane</p> <p>3 so you don't need that outer ring structure. FlgH,</p> <p>4 I'm not sure, outer membrane.</p> <p>5 Q. So if some bacteria don't need these</p> <p>6 parts, how is it that all of these parts are</p> <p>7 essential?</p> <p>8 A. You anticipate that question. In terms</p> <p>9 of the individual organism, there are different</p> <p>10 constraints. If you are gram-positive, you don't</p> <p>11 have an outer membrane, there is a not an essential</p> <p>12 requirement for having an O-ring, but you can't take</p> <p>13 that gram-positive bacillus flagella and put it in</p> <p>14 E. coli and expect it to work.</p> <p>15 So there are constraints by the system</p> <p>16 that determine which parts are necessary, you know,</p> <p>17 by definition. If you want to then extrapolate and</p> <p>18 say at some point, you know, the flagellum evolved</p> <p>19 from a gram-positive into a gram-negative, well,</p> <p>20 that's speculation.</p> <p>21 But, you know, it may be that that could</p> <p>22 have occurred, that there is enough core function</p> <p>23 that if you need another O-ring structure, you can,</p> <p>24 you know -- but if you ask is FlgH essential for</p> <p>25 function in E. coli or salmonella or Yersinia? You</p>	<p>1 many proteins, excluding the type III secretion</p> <p>2 system, there are many proteins in the flagellum</p> <p>3 that are homologous with proteins in the</p> <p>4 non-flagellar systems?</p> <p>5 A. I don't know. I mean, not at this point,</p> <p>6 but there may well be in terms of new information</p> <p>7 that has come out. Give me an example, if you have</p> <p>8 one.</p> <p>9 MR. LUCHENITSER: Let's mark this as the</p> <p>10 next exhibit here.</p> <p>11 (Deposition Exhibit No. 9 marked for</p> <p>12 identification.)</p> <p>13 THE WITNESS: Let me qualify that. I'm</p> <p>14 not sure of that, but there is a --</p> <p>15 MR. WHITE: Go ahead,</p> <p>16 THE WITNESS: I am just thinking here in</p> <p>17 terms of examples of how that would extrapolate. I</p> <p>18 mean, there are ATPase involved in flagellar protein</p> <p>19 assembly and export, there are ATPase also involved</p> <p>20 in other systems in the cell. That's a sub</p> <p>21 component of the flagellum. Is this it?</p> <p>22 Q. Exhibit 9 we have marked is an article by</p> <p>23 Cascales, Lloubes and Sturgis, and it is called:</p> <p>24 The TolQ-TolR proteins energize TolA and share</p> <p>25 homologies with the flagellar motor proteins MotA</p>

Page 182	Page 184
1 and MotB --	1 conjectures. Could, might, possibly, you know?
2 A. MotA and MotB, these are motor proteins.	2 "Together, these facts make a reasonable
3 Q. Have you reviewed this article before?	3 case for an evolutionary connection between the Mot
4 A. No, I haven't.	4 proteins of the flagellar motor and the Exb proteins
5 Q. Are you familiar with the work described	5 of outer-membrane."
6 in this summary of the article?	6 So this is part of reasonable discussion
7 A. Part of it, but I haven't read this	7 saying this is speculation. That doesn't mean it is
8 paper. Yes, I would like to, if I could.	8 true, and -- but it is part of this argument and I
9 MR. LUCHENITSER: Let's mark this as the	9 have no problem with it.
10 next one.	10 Q. Now, I think before you said that some of
11 (Deposition Exhibit No. 10 marked for	11 the proteins in the flagellar motor was one called
12 identification.)	12 the ATA system or --
13 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:	13 A. ATPase, right.
14 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 10 an article	14 Q. So those are used in some other living
15 by Kojima and Blair entitled: Conformational Change	15 systems, too?
16 in the Stator of the Bacterial Flagellar Motor.	16 A. Well, if you look at Macnab's -- so this
17 Have you seen this article before?	17 is Exhibit 8, where that table?
18 A. I haven't seen this one, but I know David	18 Q. Table 1, page 82, the one that is marked
19 Blair's work.	19 by the little orange tab.
20 Q. From the abstract, or from reviewing the	20 A. I think -- I can't remember the
21 abstract, can you tell me if you are familiar with	21 nomenclature. It has changed over the years.
22 what this article is about?	22 Several of these proteins, in terms of export
23 A. Yes, I mean, he works on the motor of the	23 function, are ATPase, they are components of an
24 flagellar MotA and MotB in terms of proton	24 ATPase that you find in other systems in the cell.
25 channeling. Yes, I am familiar with some of this	25 Q. So are you standing by the opinion you
Page 183	Page 185
1 work.	1 expressed on page nine of your report, that first
2 Q. If you could flip to page 13048, if you	2 sentence in the second paragraph where you said,
3 could read the two highlighted sections on that	3 "Additionally the other 30 proteins in flagellar
4 page?	4 motor (that are not present in the TTSS) are unique
5 A. MotA?	5 to the motor and are not found in any other living
6 Q. Yes. Just tell me when you are done	6 system," is that an opinion you are standing by or
7 reading the highlighted sections.	7 is that an opinion that you modified?
8 A. Okay, I've read the first part, okay.	8 A. I think in general I will modify it. I
9 Q. Are you familiar with the work described	9 mean these TolQ and TolR may be related proteins,
10 in those highlighted sections?	10 but it doesn't necessarily mean that they have
11 A. Right, MotA and MotB are involved in the	11 evolved from MotA or MotB. They are involved in
12 stator, conformational changes that drive direction	12 proton channeling in the cell and there are other
13 of the rotor, okay.	13 systems that require protein channeling hooked up to
14 Q. This work here, does it contradict your	14 Tone B and some of these other ones.
15 claim in your report that the 30 proteins in the	15 If you want to make the speculation that
16 motor that are not in the TTSS are --	16 one is derived from the other or they are one and
17 A. Look at the --	17 the same, we are not at that point yet.
18 Q. -- not a living system?	18 Q. Are you aware of flagellar use for
19 A. Look at the wording, "A membrane complex	19 functions other than swimming?"
20 that undergoes proton-driven conformational changes	20 A. Yes.
21 could perform useful work in contexts other than	21 Q. What functions are these for other than
22 (and simpler than) the flagellar motor, and	22 swimming?
23 ancestral form of the MotA/MotB complex might have	23 A. I am collaborating with Mike Conklin with
24 arisen independently of any part of the rotor."	24 Washington State University and <i>Campylobacter jejuni</i>
25 Those are speculative, you know.	25 and -- this was actually one of my original

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 186</p> <p>1 hypotheses when we were working on type III 2 secretion systems, that the flagellum -- we were 3 limited in our understanding of the flagellum as an 4 outboard motor propel the cell. Within that 5 function is also a highly dedicated specific protein 6 secretary device, all of the proteins that are 7 involved in the assembly of the flagellum, you know, 8 the propeller that can go out to ten cell lengths, 9 ten micrometers in length, are transported through 10 the hollow core and they assemble or preliminary 11 at the distal tip.</p> <p>12 So there is a protein secretory component 13 of the flagellum. We hypothesis that the flagellum 14 could be used for other secretion of flagellar 15 proteins and we made mutants to show that, and we 16 actually gave those mutations to Virginia Miller at 17 Washington University in St. Louis and she showed 18 that -- her students showed that a phosphoratase is 19 used as a means of export, the flagellum is used to 20 export a protein that is required for virulence, and 21 this was our original hypothesis; that in talking 22 with Bob Macnab and other people in the field in the 23 early nineties, they considered this a whimsical 24 idea at the time, but it has proven to be true. And 25 that was in part from reverse engineering.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 188</p> <p>1 virulent strain of E. coli 157 that has been 2 isolated in Germany and Czechoslovakia that is non- 3 modal, and based on our experience we predicted it 4 would have a mutation of the same gene that we find 5 in these others. One is in collaboration with Peter 6 Fang at the F.D.A., that that's certainly been the 7 case, and have actually reconstructed that mutation, 8 and its kind of the gold standard pathogen, and have 9 been doing animal studies that show that they don't 10 colonize the rectal anal junction of cattle when 11 they are missing the flagella. It seems to be 12 important in adherence in the early stages of 13 infection.</p> <p>14 Q. Now, these other functions that you 15 described, other than swimming, are all the proteins 16 of the flagellum necessary to perform these other 17 functions, or are they seldom involved in these 18 other functions?</p> <p>19 A. The flagellum can interact with receptors 20 on the surface of host cells and they could be 21 paralyzed in terms of you could have loss of 22 flagellum function, but as long as those proteins 23 are displayed on the surface, they can adhere and 24 interact with that receptor protein, that 25 recognition.</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 187</p> <p>1 I am working with Mike Conkall over at 2 Washington State University, Campo Bacter Dejuni 3 secretes a set of proteins that by all trade marks 4 are type III secretory proteins, but there is no 5 type III syringe in the genome of the cell, which 6 perplexed him.</p> <p>7 I said, "Well, you've got one, you have a 8 flagellum, and maybe the flagellum is being used to 9 secrete these proteins." And through collaboration 10 that has been shown to be the case.</p> <p>11 Q. Can a flagella also be used for the 12 purpose of bacteria making contact with other 13 bacteria or cells of other living bodies?</p> <p>14 A. Sure, it can be used as an adhesant. 15 That's another thing that we are looking at with E. 16 coli 0157, which is a pathogenic strain of E. 17 coli. But there are -- we have hypothesized that 18 the flagella could interfere with type III secretory 19 systems that are involved in secretion of anti-host 20 factors, and that this would fit together a lot of 21 observations why significant major human pathogens 22 like Yersinia pestis, Shigella dysentery, Gordetella 23 pertussis are non-modal, but they have the remnants 24 of flagellar genes in their genomes.</p> <p>25 So there was a strain -- a highly</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 189</p> <p>1 Q. So for these alternative functions only 2 some of the proteins are required; is that correct?</p> <p>3 A. For that alternative purpose, yes.</p> <p>4 Q. Doesn't that support the hypothesis -- 5 the suggestions or hypotheses that some scientists 6 have made that the flagellum evolved via -- the 7 first cell in the protins evolved from one and 8 then --</p> <p>9 A. No, that's a gross conjecture, okay? I 10 think that adherence properties are, you know, 11 indirect functions of the flagella, that there are 12 protein protein interactions that occur by chance 13 and, you know -- but the flagella wasn't an original 14 aboriginal structure to allow it to attach to some 15 surface.</p> <p>16 Q. Have you done any experiments or 17 empirical studies that would conclusively rule out 18 that possibility?</p> <p>19 A. It would be tough to rule it out. It's 20 in interpretation. I mean, it's really an 21 interpretation of the data and your perspective in 22 terms of where you want to go with it.</p> <p>23 Q. Let's go to page one of your report, and 24 you say --</p> <p>25 Q. Can I go back to that question again?</p>

48 (Pages 186 to 189)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 190</p> <p>1 And this is where it is interesting in how evolution 2 has this ability to explain everything. 3 There are organisms that can use a 4 flagellum to attach to host surfaces, okay? 5 That's a dangerous interaction with the host, 6 because the host has a whole set of receptors that 7 are keyed to find certain patterns of bacterial 8 systems or other pathogenic systems. There is what 9 we call a toll-like receptor that will bind 10 bacterial flagellum and induce the inflammatory 11 response.</p> <p>12 Other bacteria have sacrificed flagellum 13 biosynthesis because it's a dangerous protein to 14 display on the surface, and that's why we don't see 15 it in Yersinia pestis, even though at one time it 16 had the ability to make one, Shigella and now new 17 strains of E. Coli.</p> <p>18 So who is to say that, you know, the 19 original function was to bind on the surface when 20 you see organisms going in the opposite direction 21 sacrificing motility because of that potential role 22 that the host that they are infecting can mount of 23 inflammatory immune response against them.</p> <p>24 Q. Let's go on to page one of your report. 25 You say, on page one, under sub-heading one, the</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 192</p> <p>1 genetic program that regulates their assembly. 2 You know, these are, because in our 3 experience that we find such sophisticated machines, 4 the product of intelligence, are we willing to say, 5 infer, that unintelligent, undirected natural law is 6 more creative than intelligent agents that build 7 these things in the macro scale?</p> <p>8 Q. Is what you describe as an inference, the 9 best explanation, is that a scientific concept or is 10 that –</p> <p>11 A. It's a logical concept, it is logical.</p> <p>12 Q. Do you have to be a scientist to make 13 that type of inference or can just any lay person 14 make it?</p> <p>15 A. Some of these, I think, are common sense.</p> <p>16 Q. So it seems like you are saying that 17 these are really complex living systems and you are 18 very skeptical about the ability of natural 19 selection to produce these systems, and then you -- 20 it seems from those two premises you go to the 21 conclusion that the systems were intelligently 22 designed, can you explain how you get from that 23 premise to that conclusion?</p> <p>24 MR. WHITE: Objection, I don't think 25 that's a fair characterization, it's an overly</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 192</p> <p>1 second sentence under sub-heading one, "Given that 2 even the simple cells are comprised of nano machines 3 that currently defy our own intelligent capability 4 to produce, yet have the general features of many 5 machines we have made on a larger scale. 6 Intelligent design theory is simply an inference to 7 the best explanation as to the origin of this 8 design."</p> <p>9 Can you explain what you mean by 10 inference to the best explanation?</p> <p>11 A. Well, I mean, we use inferences all the 12 time, right, in terms of explaining things. That's 13 part of the definition of a theory, you can infer, 14 you can make predictions.</p> <p>15 The bacterial flagellum, as I have 16 outlined in my expert report, is, according to the 17 scientific community, a highly sophisticated rotary 18 engine. It has all the hallmarks and components of 19 engines that we have built, you know, Mazda 20 engineers have built.</p> <p>21 These are the products of highly 22 intelligent design engineering. We find these on 23 the scale that at this point we don't understand, of 24 physics and chemistry, in which they operate. They 25 self-assemble, they have an elaborate algorithm or</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 193</p> <p>1 complicated question, over broad, misstates prior 2 testimony, et cetera.</p> <p>3 THE WITNESS: I want to qualify what you 4 said in the sense that nature can produce complex 5 things, all right? You know, some people have 6 ascribed evolution as, you know, a tornado going 7 through a junk yard and assembling a fully 8 functional 747, you know? A pretty rare event. But 9 at the same time it can go through and disburse junk 10 in a very complex unique pattern, and every tornado 11 is going to give something different.</p> <p>12 Complexity alone is not what drives me to 13 this conclusion, it is specificity with it. Just 14 complexity is only part of the equation. When I 15 look at the bacterial flagellum and it has all the 16 hallmarks of machines that are the product of 17 intelligent design and the product of intelligent 18 agents, then I can infer, because this is even more 19 sophisticated, by our own admission in the 20 scientific community, than anything that has been 21 made by intelligent agents, that it, too, may be the 22 product -- or at least we should consider that it 23 may be the product of an intelligent designer. And 24 that is a perfectly logical inference. And it is 25 just in part common sense, too.</p>

Page 194	Page 196
<p>1 Q. I believe you used the word specified, 2 you said the complexity is specified?</p> <p>3 A. Right, there is a pattern there that I 4 can look from, an outside experience, you know? I 5 can go to an engineer and show him the bacterial 6 flagellum and all the parts that have been 7 identified, and they know what a stator is, they 8 know what drive shaft is, they know what a u-joint 9 is, these are labels that we have assigned to these 10 components and they have the same function in 11 intelligently designed machines.</p> <p>12 But these, again, are more complex. 13 These machines self-assemble, these machines can -- 14 are programmed by a genetic algorithm that is more 15 complex than some of the engineering programs that 16 -- or the computer programs that we have that are 17 driving functions.</p> <p>18 So, you know, what is the problem with 19 even entertaining the idea that these machines, 20 which again, Howard Berg has determined the most 21 efficient machines in the universe, are the product 22 of unintelligent chance and necessity?</p> <p>23 Q. Is specified complexity a concept that is 24 used in intelligent design theories?</p> <p>25 A. It is.</p>	<p>1 complexity but not specified complexity, is it 2 likely to have been an intelligent design or not?</p> <p>3 A. I don't know -- I don't think I 4 understand the distinction you are trying to make.</p> <p>5 Specified complexity and irreducible 6 complexity are two different concepts. Specified 7 complexity means that you find something in a 8 natural system that is similar to something we find 9 in our own experience as intelligent agents. It 10 doesn't necessarily imply that it is irreducibly 11 complex.</p> <p>12 Q. Now, on page nine you --</p> <p>13 MR. WHITE: Page nine of what, Alex?</p> <p>14 MR. LUCHENITSER: Oh, page nine of the 15 report.</p> <p>16 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>17 Q. You say -- in the second sentence of the 18 last paragraph you say, "In all irreducibly complex 19 systems in which the cause of the system is known by 20 experience or observation, intelligent design or 21 engineering played a role in the origin of the 22 system."</p> <p>23 A. All right, I'm having a hard time finding 24 it.</p> <p>25 Q. Second sentence of the third paragraph.</p>
<p>1 Q. Is it the same thing as reducible 2 complexity or is it different?</p> <p>3 A. No, no, it is different, it is looking at 4 it in terms of how you identify design and natural 5 systems. Complexity is one component. What is the 6 probability that this can happen by chance? You 7 know, if it is a small probability, it doesn't rule 8 out that it is necessarily designed. If it is 9 specified in the sense that there is a pattern that 10 we can recognize outside of the system that we are 11 looking at, then that's another component as well.</p> <p>12 If we only find codes, you know, whether 13 they are alphabets or mathematical symbols or 14 musical scales, if we only find information storage 15 systems as a product of design and then we look in 16 systems and find that they are the most information 17 rich systems in the universe that we know of, they 18 have the most sophisticated information storage 19 system that we know of, our context, whenever we 20 have a code that bears information, is the product 21 of intelligence, and we find a system more 22 sophisticated in living organisms, then we can infer 23 that it might be correct to assume there is an 24 intelligence behind these organisms?</p> <p>25 A. So if something displays irreducible</p>	<p>1 A. Okay.</p> <p>2 Q. Now, is it the case that all irreducibly 3 complex systems whose cause we know were ones that 4 were designed by human beings?</p> <p>5 A. That's the context in which I am looking 6 at this, or intelligent agents.</p> <p>7 Q. Are there any irreducibly complex systems 8 that were designed by animals? How about insects, 9 do insects create irreducibly complex systems, like 10 a bee honeycomb or various kinds of ant hills?</p> <p>11 A. That's a good question, I would have to 12 think about it. I wouldn't call, say, a honeycomb 13 or an ant hill an irreducibly complex system. You 14 know, that's a structure that they are building that 15 is a community for, you know, cohabitation, and I 16 don't see the distinction. I would have to think 17 about that.</p> <p>18 Q. Is there anything you can think of that 19 was not designed by a human and is not living that 20 is irreducibly complex?</p> <p>21 A. Irreducibly complex that is not --</p> <p>22 Q. That was not designed by a -- that is not 23 a biological system. Do you think the earth is 24 irreducibly complex?</p> <p>25 A. I mean, that's an extrapolation outside</p>

50 (Pages 194 to 197)

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 198</p> <p>1 of my area, so, you know -- I mean, to me it is 2 not --</p> <p>3 MR. WHITE: Object, it is calling for an 4 opinion beyond his expertise.</p> <p>5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>6 Q. Let me see if we can take you a little 7 down this road. The earth has bodies of water, land 8 masses, it has the earth's crust, it has got the 9 magma, it has the core, it has the atmosphere. If 10 you remove any of those components, would the earth 11 still be able to serve the function of a supporting 12 life?</p> <p>13 MR. WHITE: Same objection.</p> <p>14 THE WITNESS: It's an inanimate object, I 15 mean, it has no -- if we assign purpose to it, you 16 know, at this point -- I mean, I don't see the 17 point.</p> <p>18 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>19 Q. Can the theory of irreducible complexity 20 apply to inanimate objects?</p> <p>21 A. It's possible. I mean, there are 22 environmentalists that certainly assume that, you 23 know? The whole Gaia principle that the ecosystem 24 is intricately coordinated and interdependent for 25 the sustaining of life, and if we get in there and</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 200</p> <p>1 Now, is it correct that at one point 2 science could not explain where any feature of the 3 earth came from? For example, where oceans came 4 from, where various geological features came from, 5 such as the Grand Canyon, where land masses came 6 from or where a mountain might have come from?</p> <p>7 A. If you are thinking of in terms of 8 tectonic plates and continental drifts, yes, before 9 we had a concept of these ideas, it wasn't on the 10 drawing board. And when it was introduced, it was a 11 pretty radical idea that was met with a lot of 12 opposition, now accepted as fact.</p> <p>13 All I am saying here is that given our 14 experience that these are complex specified systems, 15 that their counterparts that we know from experience 16 are the product of design or engineering, that we 17 don't have the phylogenetic history of any of these 18 machines that neo-Darwinism hasn't produced it, 19 co-option, I think, is an inadequate explanation at 20 this point, that everybody agrees that nature has 21 the appearance of design, it can be real or only 22 apparent, that it is a viable valid argument to say 23 it is real design.</p> <p>24 Q. Do you accept the theory of plate 25 tectonics?</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 199</p> <p>1 screw up the ozone layer that it is going to have 2 consequences to biological systems.</p> <p>3 Q. So if under that type of thinking you 4 conclude that the earth is irreducibly complex, 5 would that mean that the earth was designed?</p> <p>6 A. Oh, I think you can make the inference 7 that the earth has design in it, you know? And this 8 goes in with the physics and the anthropic 9 coincidences that the requirements for life are, you 10 know, pretty well defined and rare to support life.</p> <p>11 So, yes, I would agree the earth has the 12 appearance of design for the support of life.</p> <p>13 Q. On the bottom of page nine, the third 14 paragraph, third sentence.</p> <p>15 MR. WHITE: We are back on which exhibit?</p> <p>16 MR. LUCHENITSER: If I don't specify a 17 document, we are talking about the report.</p> <p>18 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>19 Q. You say that, "Given that neither 20 standard neo-Darwinism nor co-option has adequately 21 accounted for the origin of these machines, or the 22 appearance of design that they manifest, one might 23 now consider the design hypothesis as the best 24 explanation for the origin of irreducibly complex 25 systems in the living organisms."</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 201</p> <p>1 A. Yes.</p> <p>2 Q. Would you accept that mountain ranges are 3 caused by two plates crashing into one another?</p> <p>4 A. Sure.</p> <p>5 Q. Now, before scientists developed the 6 theory of plate tectonics, did the absence of that 7 theory mean that mountain ranges were designed?</p> <p>8 A. No, no, I think you could say they are 9 the products of wind and erosion over time. I mean, 10 there may be aspects of it that -- I don't know. I 11 don't think by definition they have to be designed.</p> <p>12 Q. Why does the absence of a complete and 13 detailed evolutionary explanation of how certain 14 biochemical systems were designed -- how certain 15 biochemical systems developed mean that you can 16 scientifically say that they were intelligently 17 designed?</p> <p>18 A. I don't understand the distinction here. 19 I think that's a false dichotomy. Let's talk about 20 something I do know about. I don't know plate 21 tectonics, I'm not a geologist, but I do know how 22 new ideas in science can have a profound effect on 23 how we act.</p> <p>24 We are celebrating the hundredth year of 25 Robert Koch's receiving the Nobel prize in medicine.</p>

Page 202	Page 204
<p>1 all right? Author of the germ theory of disease. A 2 radical hypothesis in medicine. Okay. The fact 3 that microorganisms that we can't see without the 4 aid of a microscope are responsible for all these 5 infections and death in the world. When he isolated 6 the organism that causes tuberculosis which caused 7 the death of one of seven people in the 8 eighteen-hundreds, the late eighteen-hundreds, he 9 gave that lecture at the University of Berlin, not 10 in the pathology department but in a different 11 department, I forgot which one. Because Verchow, 12 who was the standard leading pathologist in the 13 world, refused to believe the scientific theory of 14 the germ theory of disease, okay? It went against 15 ages of medicine as how it was practiced.</p> <p>16 So new ideas -- what you are trying to 17 get me to say is that, all right, our old perception 18 in terms of intelligent design as a necessary 19 component can be explained away by new information, 20 at the same time, new theories, when they are 21 presented -- I'm losing my train of thought because 22 I'm getting tired. Let me back up.</p> <p>23 A new theory in science is always going 24 to be challenged at some level when it is going 25 against the conjecture, the consensus of present day</p>	<p>1 interpretations, we are going to have to come up 2 with the supporting evidence that will persuade 3 people based on that evidence. 4 But nonetheless, this is a human 5 endeavor. There are people that went to their grave 6 in the nineteen-hundreds, I'm sure, that refused to 7 believe the germ theory of disease. There are 8 people that refused to have their children 9 vaccinated because they didn't agree with it, even 10 though I think the evidence was overwhelming. 11 So once you have wed yourself to a 12 certain set of ideas, theories, it is difficult to 13 change those ideas. And, you know, this is a 14 Kuhnian way of looking at things. You have 15 paradigm shifts and scientific revolutions, and in 16 part you have to let a generation of scientists die 17 off so that you can get these ideas on the table 18 with an unbiased group of people that are willing to 19 consider them.</p> <p>20 Q. Let's go on to the next sentence of your 21 report, the fourth sentence on the bottom of page 22 nine which says, "That we have encountered systems 23 that tax our own capacities as design engineers, 24 justifiably lead us to question whether these 25 systems are the product of undirected, un-purposed,</p>
Page 203	Page 205
<p>1 body of knowledge.</p> <p>2 Q. Now, with this germ theory of disease, 3 would it be correct that it became an accepted 4 scientific theory when its proponents supported the 5 affirmative evidence that the theory actually 6 explained how the disease developed?</p> <p>7 A. Right, right.</p> <p>8 Q. But it seems here, and tell me what your 9 response to this is, it seems that proponents of 10 intelligent design are simply saying that there are 11 problems with evolution but they are not presenting 12 any affirmative evidence that in fact shows or 13 explains that life forms were in fact designed?</p> <p>14 A. That's changing. Like I said, it's a 15 young theory and people are working on these 16 questions. I think Bill Dembski has mentioned it in 17 his expert report, which I have just looked at. The 18 design proponents that are publishing in 19 peer-reviewed literature, Doug Axe, as an example, 20 in terms of protein structure enfolded sequence 21 space, you know, that are looking at it from a 22 design perspective.</p> <p>23 You know, so we are at this stage, yes, 24 where we are going to have to come up with the data, 25 we are going to have to come up with the</p>	<p>1 chance and necessity."</p> <p>2 But now, is it correct that we can 3 already genetically engineer some microscopic -- I 4 mean, some other life forms?</p> <p>5 A. We can modify organisms by genetic 6 engineering.</p> <p>7 Q. But we can't build one from scratch yet?</p> <p>8 A. Right -- well, I mean people have in part 9 synthesized a viral genome and introduced it into a 10 cell and gotten viruses as progeny. But that's 11 going on the template of what we know that genome is 12 and just reproducing it chemically, and that's not 13 creating life de novo, it is copying it and 14 providing the environment in which it is allowed to 15 replicate.</p> <p>16 Q. So now if we some day figure out how to 17 build more complex life forms from scratch, will 18 that support the intelligent design theory or will 19 that undermine the theory?</p> <p>20 A. It's going to be a very intelligent 21 process, so I think it would support it.</p> <p>22 Q. How does the fact that we can't engineer 23 such structures right now support the theory?</p> <p>24 A. Because they are of such complexity and 25 specificity that we don't understand how to do it.</p>

Page 206	Page 208
<p>1 That's not to say that we won't do it at some point, 2 but it is going to take a lot of intelligence and 3 engineering to do it, right? 4 Have we made any machines that can 5 self-replicate, a true touring machine in the Neuman 6 sense? No. Have we made a true artificially 7 intelligent system? No, but we have got pretty 8 smart computers that are making, you know, 9 decisions, but these are the product of intense 10 efforts and intelligence.</p> <p>11 Q. Now, are humans able to build bridges and 12 create artificial lakes?</p> <p>13 A. Yes.</p> <p>14 Q. And are there also natural lakes and 15 natural bridges?</p> <p>16 A. Yes.</p> <p>17 Q. And at one time was it the case that 18 humans could not build bridges or create artificial 19 lakes?</p> <p>20 MR. WHITE: Objection, what do you mean 21 by a bridge, a log across a stream?</p> <p>22 BY MR. LUCHENITZER:</p> <p>23 Q. Let's stick to artificial lakes, just to 24 keep it simple.</p> <p>25 A. I mean, how far back in history are we --</p>	<p>1 again, complex specified information. It is 2 illustrated, I think, in Contact that Sagen wrote. 3 Q. Do you have any expertise in SETI 4 science?</p> <p>5 A. No.</p> <p>6 Q. What about anthropology or forensic 7 science?</p> <p>8 A. No. In forensics, I mean, some of the 9 techniques I use, forensic scientists use in terms 10 of preliminary chain reaction, DNA sequencing, 11 restriction enzyme profiles.</p> <p>12 Q. Now, when a forensic scientist or an 13 anthropologist considers whether something was 14 designed by a human, do they consider what abilities 15 humans have?</p> <p>16 A. Right, in terms of, you know, intelligent 17 agents and experience.</p> <p>18 Q. Do they also consider what technological 19 knowledge or abilities were available to potential 20 human designers at whatever time the object may have 21 been designed?</p> <p>22 A. Again, for me this is kind of 23 speculative. But, yes, I think that's part of an 24 intricate aspect.</p> <p>25 Q. I mean, do they consider what materials</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 207</p> <p>1 recorded history? I think, yes, there is evidence 2 that people have diverted water into reservoirs and 3 used it for their purposes, or dug wells, or 4 whatever. What do you call a pond, what do you call 5 a lake? It's an intelligent process, you know?</p> <p>6 In terms of -- now, can you distinguish 7 between a man-made or a naturally causing lake? It 8 may be difficult, but I think you probably could.</p> <p>9 Q. I guess that gets us into the next line 10 of questioning. What kind of scientists attempt to 11 determine whether something was designed by an 12 intelligent cause or not, other than intelligent 13 design theorists?</p> <p>14 A. I think that's a component of several 15 disciplines. Forensics, is one I can think of off 16 the top of my head. Anthropology, you know? I 17 think I mentioned before the SETI project.</p> <p>18 Q. Do you have any expertise in how forensic 19 scientists or anthropologists or SETI scientists 20 attempt to determine whether objects were designed 21 by intelligent actors?</p> <p>22 A. I don't know if you are specifically 23 talking about objects, but in terms of events, you 24 know, objects or information for a SETI scientist, 25 yes. I mean, they have -- they are looking for,</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 209</p> <p>1 were available to the human -- the potential human 2 designers at the time the object was designed?</p> <p>3 A. Yes.</p> <p>4 Q. And do they consider what motivations the 5 potential human designers might have had?</p> <p>6 A. I don't know, I don't know. That's 7 speculation, whether that's part of their discipline 8 or not.</p> <p>9 Q. Do they consider the question of how the 10 humans could have achieved the design of the object 11 they are looking at?</p> <p>12 A. Yes, I think if you look at the -- I 13 mean, as an example, in Florence, the Dome of the 14 Chapel, that was a pretty complex engineering feat 15 and there weren't any records left in terms of how 16 that was made, or Stone Henge, where did those 17 materials come from, how were they moved, how were 18 they constructed?</p> <p>19 Q. Now, is intelligent design theory able to 20 consider any of the factors that we have just listed 21 that anthropologists or forensic scientists 22 consider?</p> <p>23 A. In terms of motivation or --</p> <p>24 Q. Yes, the factors or abilities, 25 technological possibilities, what materials were</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 210</p> <p>1 available, what the motivations were and how the 2 design could have been achieved?</p> <p>3 A. Not at this point. I don't want to 4 speculate. I mean, we can look at what materials 5 are available, certainly, in terms of what 6 differentiates inorganic from organic. In terms of 7 motivations of designer, I mean that's speculative. 8 If it's a product of designer creation, what 9 motivates any creative act?</p> <p>10 Q. And when anthropologists and forensic 11 scientists are looking at or trying to figure out 12 what an inanimate object was created by human 13 behavior, they are able to rule out the possibility 14 that it was created by a self-replicating non-human 15 system; is that correct?</p> <p>16 A. I don't know what you mean by a 17 self-replicating non-human system.</p> <p>18 Q. That's much more confusing than the way I 19 could have asked the question.</p> <p>20 They are only looking at inanimate – 21 they are not looking at living biological forms, 22 they are looking at physical objects; is that right?</p> <p>23 A. Anthropologists, yes. And so you can ask 24 the question, based on my experience can wind, sand, 25 and erosion produce this rock or is it the product</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 212</p> <p>1 nobody argues with the fact that there is design 2 present. It boils down to is it real or is it just 3 apparent? Can natural law produce it?</p> <p>4 And I think -- look at it this way. The 5 stakes have increased. The complexity and 6 specificity of the cell is orders of magnitude above 7 what we thought 30, 40 years ago, you know, well 8 beyond what Darwin ever considered. The mechanism 9 to produce that change has remained fairly static. 10 mutation, natural selection.</p> <p>11 Is it wrong then to ask that because we 12 don't have any new mechanism now to account for this 13 unanticipated complexity in these systems that there 14 may be something else at play. The natural alone is 15 insufficient to explain it. Those are valid 16 questions.</p> <p>17 And we are still stuck with mutation, 18 natural selection, throw a little lateral gene 19 transfer in there, but we have got some stuff that 20 we didn't know existed 30 years ago, you know? It 21 is equivalent to whoa, you know? The galaxies are 22 expanding. We thought it was a static universe.</p> <p>23 What does that imply? Are we right? 24 Should we go back and reexamine our initial 25 assumptions? Are we going to stick to the same</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 211</p> <p>1 of engineering? Whether it's an arrowhead or a 2 carving, or something like that. Yes, you can 3 infer.</p> <p>4 Q. And an anthropologist or forensic 5 scientist is trying to determine whether something 6 was created by a human, they have other things that 7 were created by humans to compare with, right?</p> <p>8 A. Right.</p> <p>9 Q. And does intelligent design have any life 10 forms that we know for sure were created by an 11 intelligent designer to make a comparison with?</p> <p>12 A. Again, it's the inference in terms of 13 what we have intelligently made that show homologous 14 structures with things that we are finding in living 15 systems. We have codes, we make codes, we find a 16 code inherent in all organisms. Our experience 17 tells us that codes, alphabets come from 18 intelligence.</p> <p>19 If we find one that is much more 20 sophisticated, I infer there is an agent. Molecular 21 machines that nobody anticipated 20, 30 years ago 22 that are more sophisticated than our intelligent 23 engineers can build, I can infer that, yes, this has 24 inherent design in their construct.</p> <p>25 Looking at nature there is -- again,</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 213</p> <p>1 consensus mechanism that has been under contention 2 for the last 120 years?</p> <p>3 Q. But now, isn't it the case also that over 4 the last 30, 40 years our knowledge of evolutionary 5 pathways and evolution theory has also increased?</p> <p>6 A. Go back to Carl Woese's article. Simon 7 Conway Morris's article, you know? We can account 8 for the appearance of novel information at this 9 point. Look at the beginning of Simon Conway 10 Morris's article in Cell. The only real consensus 11 is evolution happened. We don't have mechanism. 12 Everything else is in contention, all right? 13 Because we have to deal with molecular clocks and 14 fitting them with geological time scales and they 15 are not in synch.</p> <p>16 I mean, these are things that weren't 17 anticipated 20, 30 years ago. And these are things 18 that are being debated in the scientific community 19 and I don't think they are adequately being 20 presented to -- no, I won't say -- I'll leave it at 21 that.</p> <p>22 Q. Would you agree that in the last 30 to 40 23 years evolutionary theory has made considerable 24 progress in presenting hypotheses and potential 25 explanations as to how complex molecular biochemical</p>

54 (Pages 210 to 213)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 214</p> <p>1 systems could have evolved?</p> <p>2 A. It has been a major component of</p> <p>3 evolutionary science and I don't think it has been</p> <p>4 that successful in the sense that we still can't</p> <p>5 come up with a mechanism where phylogenetic history</p> <p>6 of how one of these macromolecular machines evolved,</p> <p>7 okay? We have a lot of just-so stories, we have a</p> <p>8 lot of icons and speculations. Do the</p> <p>9 experiment, get an evolutionary book -- an evolution</p> <p>10 book and look at the evolution of genomes, how much</p> <p>11 is fact, how much is speculation and conjecture?</p> <p>12 You can do that experiment, you know?</p> <p>13 Just like this other paper by Blair, this might --</p> <p>14 we can conjecture. There is a lot that we don't</p> <p>15 know, and I think we are in some part errant in</p> <p>16 presenting this idea that the evidence is</p> <p>17 overwhelming when amongst ourselves we are debating</p> <p>18 these issues.</p> <p>19 I wouldn't be here, you wouldn't be here</p> <p>20 if my position wasn't being taken seriously by the</p> <p>21 Ken Millers and other people in biology. It</p> <p>22 wouldn't be in Time magazine, it wouldn't be in</p> <p>23 Wired magazine, it wouldn't be addressed by National</p> <p>24 Geographic. If we are flat-earthers, nobody would</p> <p>25 give us the time of day.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 216</p> <p>1 engineering from life forms that were not engineered</p> <p>2 by humans who were conducting genetic engineering</p> <p>3 work?</p> <p>4 MR. WHITE: Object just because it is</p> <p>5 very confusing.</p> <p>6 THE WITNESS: I mean, if I modify</p> <p>7 Escherichia coli or Yersinia by adding new genetic</p> <p>8 information and ask -- you know, give that to 20</p> <p>9 scientists, are they going to be able to tell if</p> <p>10 this phenotype is something that I modified versus</p> <p>11 something that is natural? I'm not necessarily</p> <p>12 sure.</p> <p>13 I mean, we are taking natural genetic</p> <p>14 information that is already present or cutting and</p> <p>15 splicing genes from different systems making fusion</p> <p>16 proteins that, you know, we may not have seen before</p> <p>17 and asking can someone tell the difference? I don't</p> <p>18 know.</p> <p>19 (Recess taken.)</p> <p>20 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>21 Q. Can you explain what a peer review</p> <p>22 journal is?</p> <p>23 A. A peer review journal is one in which you</p> <p>24 submit a manuscript to the editor, the editor will</p> <p>25 usually read the abstract or look at the title and</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 215</p> <p>1 Q. Do you think the Ken Millers and other</p> <p>2 major pro-evolution scientists are responding to</p> <p>3 intelligent design theory because they think it's</p> <p>4 science theory or just because the work of</p> <p>5 intelligent design theorists has gotten considerable</p> <p>6 public attention?</p> <p>7 A. I don't want to speculate in terms of</p> <p>8 what their motivation is. I think we have</p> <p>9 scientific arguments that are valid, they are on the</p> <p>10 table, they are in opposition to some basic</p> <p>11 fundamental tenants of evolutionary biology and we</p> <p>12 are hitting some hot buttons.</p> <p>13 Stephen Jay Gould is going to come out</p> <p>14 and write a four-page article in Scientific American</p> <p>15 reviewing Phillip Johnson's book, a lawyer that is</p> <p>16 not a scientist, back in the early nineties, why,</p> <p>17 unless he is making valid points. You bring out the</p> <p>18 heavy guns when you are taking fire, otherwise you</p> <p>19 ignore it.</p> <p>20 Q. Can biologists distinguish human</p> <p>21 engineered life forms from non-human engineered</p> <p>22 ones?</p> <p>23 A. Please repeat the question.</p> <p>24 Q. Can biologists distinguish life forms</p> <p>25 that were engineered by humans practicing genetic</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 217</p> <p>1 determine whether or not, you know, it is worthy of</p> <p>2 publication. If he thinks it is an interesting</p> <p>3 topic or it fits with the scope of their journal, he</p> <p>4 will identify experts in the area, usually from my</p> <p>5 experience three to five, copy the paper, send it</p> <p>6 out to them, have them read it, criticize it,</p> <p>7 determine whether or not it is worthy of publication</p> <p>8 or not, or worthy of publication with certain</p> <p>9 modifications, and then send it back.</p> <p>10 Q. Are articles in the conference proceeding</p> <p>11 volumes generally considered to be peer reviewed?</p> <p>12 A. Not with the same rigor that normal peer</p> <p>13 reviewed journals are. If you are referring to</p> <p>14 Design and Nature, that was reviewed by scientists,</p> <p>15 but not on the same level as the meeting. So, you</p> <p>16 know, people look at meeting or symposia, publishing</p> <p>17 from those with a little bit different view in terms</p> <p>18 of the rigor in which they have been reviewed.</p> <p>19 Q. So we are talking about the 2004 article</p> <p>20 wrote Mr. Meyer there which you quote in your report</p> <p>21 on page nine; is that correct?</p> <p>22 A. Right.</p> <p>23 Q. And so you would not characterize that</p> <p>24 article as peer reviewed?</p> <p>25 A. Not on the same level as I would from</p>

55 (Pages 214 to 217)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 218</p> <p>1 papers I have in the Journal of Molecular 2 Microbiology or Journal of Bacteriology or the 3 proceedings of the National Academy of Science. 4 They are not under the same constraints.</p> <p>5 What makes one point interesting is that 6 this is in a meeting referred to now as biomimetics. 7 Engineers, architects are coming to biologists 8 because they recognize biological systems have 9 solved some pretty sophisticated complex problems in 10 structure and engineering. So they are coming to 11 us, intelligent engineers are coming to biology to 12 ask how these problems were solved in this 13 interface.</p> <p>14 Engineers are interested in the flagellar 15 motor because it is a true nano machine and they 16 recognize it has a lot of potential and applications 17 to systems they can develop.</p> <p>18 So I think it is somewhat ironic that 19 intelligent engineers are looking to products of 20 non-intelligent chance and necessity of how did you 21 do this?</p> <p>22 Q. You have published a number of articles 23 reporting the results of research you did in 24 scientific peer-reviewed journals; is that correct?</p> <p>25 A. Yes.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 220</p> <p>1 any peer review journals, any articles discussing 2 intelligent design in any peer review journals? 3 A. I mean, we just alluded to that before. 4 I think a lot of the results that I have have 5 implications for intelligent design, but they are 6 not papers that are published specifically 7 supporting that position. Consider -- well, I'll 8 leave it at that.</p> <p>9 Q. So you have not published any articles in 10 a peer review journal that actually discusses 11 intelligent design -- any articles that actually 12 discuss intelligent design?</p> <p>13 MR. WHITE: That's mischaracterizing what 14 he just said.</p> <p>15 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>16 Q. Is that's correct?</p> <p>17 A. There is one 2004 paper.</p> <p>18 Q. The Minnich/Meyer paper?</p> <p>19 A. Right, and that's minimally peer 20 reviewed, but it was reviewed by scientists and, you 21 know -- but Alex, I'm not stupid, you know? I'm not 22 stupid. There is not an open avenue for this.</p> <p>23 Steve Meyer, I'm sure you are well aware 24 of, got one through a journal that has a citation 25 indices of, you know, just barely on scale, it's a</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 219</p> <p>1 Q. Can you tell me why you decided to 2 publish these articles in the peer-review 3 journals? MR. WHITE: I'm sorry, did you 4 ask --</p> <p>5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>6 Q. Can you tell me why you decided to 7 publish the articles in the peer review journals?</p> <p>8 A. That's my job. To get funding I have to 9 produce. That's judged by not only the number, but 10 the quality of publications that are generated.</p> <p>11 Q. Have you ever served as a reviewer for 12 any peer review journals?</p> <p>13 A. I have ad hoc review, I have been on 14 grant review panels as well, that have as rigorous 15 peer review process.</p> <p>16 Q. And which journals are considered the 17 most prestigious in the biochemistry area or 18 molecular biology?</p> <p>19 A. Cell, Journal of Molecular Biology, 20 Proceedings of the National Academy of Science, 21 Nature, and my own sub-discipline, Journal 22 Bacteriology and Molecular Microbiology, Journal of 23 Biological Chemistry, those are -- I can give you a 24 whole list, if you want.</p> <p>25 Q. Have you ever published any articles in</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 221</p> <p>1 journal that nobody reads, purporting intelligent 2 design, and the results were -- the editor was 3 threatened with loss of his job, they wanted to know 4 who the reviewers for this paper were in a journal 5 that is inconsequential.</p> <p>6 So when you criticize me for not 7 producing peer reviewed journals on intelligent 8 design, there is a reason for it, you know? There 9 are risks involved in terms of the consequences.</p> <p>10 Peer review works both ways. It keeps 11 junk out, but it also traditionally has kept novel 12 new ways of looking at things out as well. Okay?</p> <p>13 Anything that doesn't mesh with the consensus is 14 going to cause a problem, especially with this 15 implication.</p> <p>16 Q. Have you submitted any articles that 17 explicitly discuss intelligent design to any peer 18 reviewed journals?</p> <p>19 A. No.</p> <p>20 Q. And can you tell me why not?</p> <p>21 A. I just told you why.</p> <p>22 Q. But people already know you are an 23 intelligent design proponent; is that correct, 24 people in the community?</p> <p>25 A. In my people that -- you know, in my</p>

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 222</p> <p>1 department, yes, at this university they know where 2 I stand.</p> <p>3 Q. Do you think people in the general 4 scientific community know, people who read these 5 journals?</p> <p>6 A. I don't know.</p> <p>7 Q. So you think you might have some -- you 8 might lose standing in the scientific community by 9 submitting articles advocating for intelligent 10 design to a peer reviewed journal?</p> <p>11 A. That looks like the way it is.</p> <p>12 MR. WHITE: Object to the phrasing of 13 that question.</p> <p>14 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>15 Q. But you are not worried about the 16 publicity you might get, either serving as an expert 17 in this case or from your speaking?</p> <p>18 A. You bet I am. There is a real risk 19 involved here, and don't minimize it, you know? Ken 20 Miller can do this same thing and be supported by 21 the consensus community. I am taking a real risk.</p> <p>22 MR. LUCHENITSER: Could you mark this as 23 exhibit whatever it is?</p> <p>24 (Deposition Exhibit No. 11 marked for 25 identification.)</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 224</p> <p>1 Q. After he revised it did he give you a 2 chance to edit it?</p> <p>3 A. Yes. I want to say one thing, too, in 4 light of this. Like I said, I was on sabbatical in 5 Baghdad. This was a risky paper for me to write. I 6 thought about just leaving out this last section, 7 okay? because of the implications and being, you 8 know -- coming out in print. But I believe it, but 9 I have a family to feed.</p> <p>10 The night I was writing this, you know -- 11 this is just incidental, you know, we took nine 12 mortar rounds right on top of our position, and I 13 thought, I don't care, you know, I might not be here 14 tomorrow, hit the send and off it went and I was 15 committed.</p> <p>16 Q. Did your service in Iraq in any way 17 affect your thinking about intelligent design 18 theory?</p> <p>19 A. No, no. It gave me a different 20 perspective of life, though.</p> <p>21 Q. Has any journals ever asked you to 22 publish or to submit an article to them on the 23 subject of intelligent design?</p> <p>24 A. No.</p> <p>25 Q. Have you ever served as a peer reviewer</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 223</p> <p>1 MR. WHITE: Do you have an extra copy?</p> <p>2 MR. LUCHENITSER: Oh, sure.</p> <p>3 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>4 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 11 the article 5 entitled Scott Minnich and Stephen Meyer, Genetic 6 analysis of coordinate flagellar and type III 7 regulatory circuits in pathogenic bacteria.</p> <p>8 And is this article the one you have been 9 referring to several times, your article concerning 10 intelligent design published in 2004?</p> <p>11 A. Correct.</p> <p>12 Q. Can you tell me which part of the article 13 you drafted and which part Mr. Meyer drafted?</p> <p>14 A. I essentially wrote the entire paper when 15 I was on sabbatical with the Iraq Survey Group in 16 Baghdad in 2004. Steve and I had discussed at 17 length the implications of the bacterial flagellum 18 as a model for intelligent design. I roughed out 19 the philosophical implication section and e-mailed 20 it to Steve.</p> <p>21 I also had him look at the rest of this 22 and, you know, go over it for general content and 23 clarity. But he revised part of the philosophical 24 implications. He is a scientific philosopher, and 25 that was our collaboration on this.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 225</p> <p>1 of any articles relating to the subject of 2 intelligent design, that explicitly discussed 3 intelligent design?</p> <p>4 A. For peer review journals or -- I'm trying 5 to think. I reviewed a couple of Mike Behe's papers 6 in the past, you know, that have gone into -- I'm 7 not sure which journal it went to, Journal of 8 Theoretical Biology, or something like that. And 9 Doug Axe's paper I was privy to before it was 20 published. And that is an intelligent design paper, 11 but laid kind of between the lines, not explicitly, 12 but that was its impact.</p> <p>13 Q. Behe's paper you were referring to, were 14 those published in peer review journals?</p> <p>15 A. I'm not sure, it has been a while ago. 16 Some of journals I'm not familiar with or venues of 17 publications, and even the ones that I have read, if 18 they eventually were published, I don't know.</p> <p>19 Q. Are you aware of any articles published 20 in peer review journals that explicitly advocate in 21 favor of theory of intelligent design?</p> <p>22 A. Yes, Steve Meyer's paper and the 23 Smithsonian Journal, the Biological Society of 24 Washington D.C., you know. That was a fire storm.</p> <p>25 Q. You say is that the only one?</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 226</p> <p>1 A. Doug Axe's papers that are in the Journal 2 of Biological Chemistry, I think. 3 Q. Is there anything else? 4 A. There may be some, I'm not sure, in terms 5 of what my colleagues are doing. It's a pretty 6 loose affiliation. I mean, I don't have time to 7 interact with these people all the time. 8 Q. You said that Doug Axe's -- did you say 9 before that his work didn't really explicitly 10 discuss intelligent design or was just kind of in 11 between the lines, or what? 12 A. You mean from my conversations with Doug? 13 Q. So the articles he had in peer reviewed 14 journals that were published, were they articles 15 that explicitly advocate for I-D, intelligent 16 design, or just stuff that kind of -- articles that 17 implicitly -- 18 A. They have an impact in terms of how we 19 interpret sequence phase and protein folding, but I 20 think they are more consistent with an intelligent 21 design perspective than Darwinian, okay? 22 Q. Have you ever received any grants to work 23 on -- to do work in the field of intelligent design 24 theory? 25 A. No.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 228</p> <p>1 Discovery Institute's Center for Science and 2 Culture? 3 A. Correct. 4 Q. And is the Discovery Institute's Center 5 for Science and Culture recognized as an authority 6 on intelligent design? 7 MR. WHITE: Objection, recognized by 8 whom? 9 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 10 Q. Generally recognized by people in the 11 intelligent design community? 12 A. Yes, I mean that's a think tank where a 13 lot of people have associations. 14 Q. Were you awarded like a specific 15 fellowship for specific time period? 16 A. No, no, I mean, it's a pretty loose 17 affiliation. I don't know -- you know, I agreed to 18 be a fellow and they put my name on a list. 19 Q. So they didn't give you a project or any 20 money, or anything like that? 21 A. No, no. In fact, that's an area of 22 contention I have with Robert Pennock, because when 23 he came here, he informed the biology faculty 24 upstairs that I was on the Discovery Institute 25 payroll and I was receiving \$47,000 a year, that I</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 227</p> <p>1 Q. Can you tell me which individuals have 2 provided the content of the intelligent design 3 theory? 4 MR. WHITE: Objection as to what do you 5 mean by content? 6 MR. LUCHENITSER: The specific components 7 of whatever intelligent design theory. 8 THE WITNESS: You mean who are the people 9 that are really leading this area, this field? Yes, 10 Steve Meyer, Bill Dembski, Paul Nelson, Mike Behe, 11 you know, those are -- I mean, you have a stack of 12 their books there. 13 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 14 Q. Would you include yourself among those 15 people? 16 A. Not in the front line. I mean, that's 17 not my primary focus and my scientific endeavor. I 18 am a research microbial geneticist, I study 19 pathogenesis, that's what pays the bills, you know? 20 Q. Have you developed any specific elements 21 of the intelligent design theory? 22 A. In a consulting aspect, you know, in 23 terms of irreducible complexity of the bacterial 24 flagellum is a paradigm for intelligent design. 25 Q. Is it correct that you a fellow of the</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 229</p> <p>1 was running a haven of graduate students in 2 intelligent design, which blew me away. 3 I have never been on the payroll of the 4 Discovery Institute, and how an individual can come 5 on this campus and accuse me of foment this 6 conspiratorial perspective. I mean it just -- you 7 know, he is an expert witness, and boy, if he 8 performs with that same amount of integrity in his 9 general work, I have a problem with it. 10 Q. Can you tell me what you do in your 11 capacity as a fellow for the Discovery Institute 12 Center for Science and Culture? 13 A. I have no job description. I have never 14 been given any assigned tasks. Occasionally I am 15 called up and they say, "Will you review this?" Or, 16 "Do you want to -- what do you think about this?" 17 More as a consultant. 18 But it is pretty minimal, you know? I am 19 good friends with Steve Meyer. But in terms of a 20 defined job description or what it means to be a 21 fellow, no. 22 Q. And are you familiar with a document 23 called The Wedge Document? 24 A. I have never read it. I am familiar with 25 it. What I have have read about it is, you know,</p>

58 (Pages 226 to 229)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 230</p> <p>1 what other people have said about it. 2 MR. LUCHENITSER: I will ask you to mark 3 this. 4 (Deposition Exhibit No. 12 marked for 5 identification.) 6 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 7 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 12 a document 8 called The Wedge Center for the Renewal of Science 9 and Culture, Discovery Institute. And I am going to 10 ask you to flip to -- okay, this says page two up 11 here, it might be page four of the document? 12 A. It's got this table? 13 Q. Yes, there is a table with three columns 14 and -- 15 MR. WHITE: I also object on the grounds 16 of foundational identifications. Professor Minnich 17 said he has never seen this thing and doesn't know 18 about it. 19 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 20 Q. Where it says, "Goals, governing goals," 21 in the first column, and the second goal listed is, 22 "To replace materialistic explanations with the 23 theistic understanding of nature and human beings 24 are created by God," do you agree with that goal of 25 The Wedge document?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 232</p> <p>1 inherently wrong with this. 2 Q. Is it a goal of yours or is it not 3 relevant to what you are doing? 4 MR. WHITE: Objection, asked and 5 answered. 6 THE WITNESS: No. I mean, my goal in 7 life is to do science, be a father, pay my bills, be 8 a contributing citizen. I am a Christian and with 9 that comes holding Christian tenants and doctrines. 10 There is a commandment in terms of evangelism or 11 defending your position, but I am not a missionary. 12 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 13 Q. Now, are you aware that the Discovery 14 Institute has issued a press release that is 15 critical of the actions taken by the Dover School 16 District that led to this lawsuit? 17 A. I haven't seen it. 18 Q. Okay, I'll give you a copy of it. 19 A. Okay. 20 (Deposition Exhibit No. 13 marked for 21 identification.) 22 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 23 Q. Okay, we have marked as Exhibit 13 a 24 document called: Discovery Calls Dover Evolution 25 Policy Misguided. Calls For Its Withdrawal.</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 231</p> <p>1 MR. WHITE: Objection, this is -- you are 2 asking about Discovery Institute's alleged document 3 here. 4 MR. LUCHENITSER: I just want to know if 5 Dr. Minnich agrees with that goal. 6 THE WITNESS: Which one are you asking 7 about? 8 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 9 Q. The second goal listed in the first 10 column. 11 A. "To replace materialistic explanations 12 with the theistic understanding that nature and 13 human beings are created by God." That's not part 14 of my agenda, you know? 15 Q. Do you think that's a worthwhile goal to 16 pursue? 17 MR. WHITE: Objection. 18 THE WITNESS: That's a loaded question. 19 Turn it around, and, you know, Richard Dawkins and 20 Dan Dennett have an agenda to, you know, replace 21 religious belief with a materialistic viewpoint of 22 the world, is that not legitimate? I mean, they are 23 driven by their world view and they want to see it 24 adopted. Other people have a different position, 25 you know. I don't think there is anything</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 233</p> <p>1 And if you could read the first two 2 paragraphs of that press release and let me know if 3 you agree or disagree with the opinions expressed by 4 the Discovery Institute. 5 MR. WHITE: And I will object to the lack 6 of foundation, no showing of authenticity, and you 7 are asking him to go into the head of the Discovery 8 Institute. 9 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 10 Q. I just want to know if you agree or 11 disagree with any of the positions expressed there. 12 A. I'm not a policy expert so that's not my 13 area, it's not my expertise so I don't want to 14 comment. So that's my answer. 15 I will say that from the viewpoint of the 16 Discovery Institute and my own personal opinion, 17 intelligent design is not -- should not at this 18 point be part of any curriculum in a public school. 19 Q. So you do agree with that, that it should 20 not be a part of the curriculum? 21 MR. WHITE: Objection, that's not what 22 this paragraph is saying. 23 THE WITNESS: That's not what this is 24 saying. I am just saying, you know -- and they are 25 not -- the Dover -- from my understanding of the</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 234</p> <p>1 Dover School Board, they are not saying that they 2 are going to incorporate intelligent design into 3 their curriculum, they are going to teach the state 4 board requirements in terms of Darwinian evolution, 5 and that's what they should do.</p> <p>6 I haven't talked to anybody on the school 7 board and I am not aware of the motivation for the 8 policy that they have written.</p> <p>9 Q. Are you a member of any other 10 organizations?</p> <p>11 MR. WHITE: Time out. Exhibit 14 is 12 withdrawn now?</p> <p>13 MR. LUCHENITSER: I didn't have it 14 marked.</p> <p>15 MR. WHITE: I'm sorry.</p> <p>16 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>17 Q. Are you a member of any other 18 organizations that are in any way involved with 19 intelligent design theory?</p> <p>20 A. Yes, I think I am. Bill Dembski has a 21 society of -- I don't know what they call it, but 22 they asked me if wanted to be a fellow and put my 23 name on that as a member, and I have, but I have 24 never -- I mean, I've never done anything or gone to 25 any meetings or participated in any discussions.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 236</p> <p>1 is incorrect? 2 A. I'm sure any textbook has inaccuracies in 3 it. I don't know of any specifics. 4 Q. Are you aware of a new textbook under 5 development called: 'The Design of Life'?</p> <p>6 A. I just heard about it in the context of, 7 you know, this lawsuit.</p> <p>8 Q. Do you have any role in the development 9 of: 'The Design of Life'?</p> <p>10 A. No. 11 (Deposition Exhibit No. 14 marked for 12 identification.)</p> <p>13 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>14 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 14 a document 15 entitled: Dover Area School District News, Biology 16 Curriculum update, and I want to ask you to flip to 17 page two of this newsletter document and read the 18 third paragraph of the first column which starts 19 with the words, "In simple terms on a molecular 20 level scientists have discovered a purposeful 21 arrangement of parts which cannot be explained by 22 Darwin's theory. In fact, since the 23 nineteen-fifties advances in molecular biology and 24 chemistry have shown us that living cells, the 25 fundamental units of life processes, cannot be</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 235</p> <p>1 Q. Have you ever read the book: Of Pandas 2 and People?</p> <p>3 A. I have skimmed it.</p> <p>4 Q. Do you know which edition you skimmed?</p> <p>5 A. The 1993 edition. I think that's the 6 last edition, right?</p> <p>7 Q. Do you understand that to be the edition 8 that has been made available to students the Dover 9 School District?</p> <p>10 A. That's my understanding.</p> <p>11 Q. So you didn't read the whole thing?</p> <p>12 A. You know, I skipped through -- I have 13 skimmed the whole book. I know what the contents 14 are, basically.</p> <p>15 Q. Do you believe the book to be an accurate 16 presentation of the intelligent design theory?</p> <p>17 A. Yes and no. I mean, again, contextually 18 this was written in 1993 and things were just 19 getting off the ground at that point in time. So it 20 is outdated, as any textbook would be that is a 21 biology textbook because of just the rapidity in 22 which data is collected. But the basic arguments, I 23 think, stand in terms of alternative views of 24 looking at the basic principles of it.</p> <p>25 Q. Is there anything in the book you believe</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 237</p> <p>1 explained by chance."</p> <p>2 Do you agree with that statement?</p> <p>3 A. In part. You know, I think this is 4 written for the lay public. You know, I would 5 qualify some of these.</p> <p>6 Q. Do you think the statement is too strong?</p> <p>7 A. Yes, I mean it's -- I mean, it has a 8 flavor of an absolute and I hesitate -- you know, I 9 wouldn't have written it like that.</p> <p>10 Q. How would you qualify the statement?</p> <p>11 A. I wouldn't use words like, "Have 12 discovered a purposeful arrangement of parts which 13 cannot be explained by Darwinian theory." I would 14 say when you have -- as I have mentioned before, we 15 have discovered macromolecular machines that all of 16 us agree are pretty amazing that we didn't 17 anticipate, and this throws a new light in terms of 18 Darwinian mechanism to produce them, and they need 19 to be reevaluated -- or our consensus viewpoint 20 needs to be reevaluated.</p> <p>21 Q. Do you think the statement could mislead 22 its readers about what the current state of 23 scientific knowledge is?</p> <p>24 MR. WHITE: Objection, calls for 25 speculation.</p>

60 (Pages 234 to 237)

Page 238

1 THE WITNESS: I mean, that's speculative,
 2 I don't know how the lay public -- I don't know who
 3 this is written for or what context -- I mean, is it
 4 the newspaper article? Is this a --

5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:

6 Q. Actually, it's Dover Area School District
 7 News, so this -- I believe it is made available to
 8 both students and parents in the school district.

9 MR. WHITE: I will just object to lack of
 10 foundation showing authenticity, especially since
 11 Professor Minnich hasn't seen this before.

12 THE WITNESS: Right. I mean, there is
 13 no, you know, title in terms of journal or
 14 publication that this is present in.

15 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:

16 Q. That's all right, we can establish that
 17 elsewhere at trial.

18 But would you, from your standpoint as an
 19 educator, would you support the making of this
 20 statement I quoted to high school students?

21 A. This one here?

22 Q. Yes.

23 A. Not as it is written.

24 (Deposition Exhibit No. 15 marked for
 25 identification.)

Page 240

1 audience. "Mechanical philosophy was ever blind to
 2 this fact. Intelligent design, on the other hand,
 3 readily embraces the sacramental nature of physical
 4 reality."

5 I'm not really sure what that means,
 6 "just the Logos theology."

7 "The world is a mirror representing the
 8 divine life."

9 It's a question of semantics, but I think
 10 this is consistent with Christian doctrine. Again
 11 going back to Romans, Chapter One, I mean it says
 12 that God has revealed Himself in what has been
 13 created. It is clearly evident, his attributes.

14 Traditionally, Christian theology has
 15 looked at nature as a second set of scriptures, and
 16 this is really, I think, reforming what that says,
 17 that we can learn about God from the study of
 18 nature. This has been a motivating force even in
 19 the development of science as we practice it today,
 20 agreed to by secular historians and scientists.

21 So in one sense I don't have a problem
 22 with this. "Intelligent design is just the Logos
 23 theology of John's Gospel," I assume he is referring
 24 to that: In the beginning was the word; in the
 25 beginning was information. That's consistent with

Page 239

1 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:

2 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 15 a document
 3 called: Intelligent Design. It's in an article
 4 that was published in Touchstone by Dembski called:
 5 A Primer on the Discernment of Intelligent Design.

6 And if you could flip through the last
 7 page of this article and look at the last paragraph,
 8 I am just going to read you the paragraph and ask
 9 you if you agree or disagree with this.

10 It states, "The world is a mirror
 11 representing the divine life. The mechanical
 12 philosophy was ever blind to this fact. Intelligent
 13 design, on the other hand, readily embraces the
 14 sacramental nature of physical reality. Indeed,
 15 intelligent design is just the Logos theology of
 16 John's Gospel restated in the idiom of information
 17 theory."

18 MR. WHITE: Also object, you are having
 19 him take this paragraph out of context of this
 20 article, which is about 11 pages long which he has
 21 never seen before.

22 THE WITNESS: Yes, I haven't read this
 23 article.

24 This is Journal of Mere Christianity,
 25 this is a Christian publication written to a defined

Page 241

1 an intelligent design perspective with, I think, our
 2 view of the world.

3 Q. I want to read you a quote by William
 4 Dembski, which is, "Any view of the sciences that
 5 leaves Christ out of the picture must be seen as
 6 fundamentally deficient." Would you agree with
 7 that?

8 A. I don't know the context of what he is
 9 stating.

10 MR. WHITE: Do you have the actual
 11 written statement from The Lookout?

12 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:

13 Q. Let me show it to you.

14 MR. WHITE: Do you want to mark that as
 15 an exhibit?

16 MR. LUCHENITSER: Yes.

17 (Deposition Exhibit No. 16 marked for
 18 identification.)

19 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:

20 Q. Exhibit 16 has been marked as: William
 21 Dembski, Intelligent Design, The Bridge Between
 22 Science and Thrology.

23 We are looking at page 206, the first
 24 full paragraph, the first sentence of the paragraph
 25 starting with words, "If we take seriously."

61 (Pages 238 to 241)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 242</p> <p>1 MR. WHITE: And again, I will just 2 object, that you are asking Professor Minnich to 3 comment on a sentence out of a multi-page article he 4 has yet to read.</p> <p>5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>6 Q. I'm just interested in Professor Dembski, 7 whether you agree --</p> <p>8 A. Yes, Bill Dembski is a trained 9 philosopher and has theological training as well as 10 mathematics. I am neither -- I think that --</p> <p>11 Chaledon --</p> <p>12 So that any view of the sciences that 13 leaves Christ out of the picture must be seen as 14 fundamentally deficient. Is that the main point 15 that --</p> <p>16 Q. Yes, the question is, do you agree with 17 that or disagree?</p> <p>18 A. I would have to think about it. I mean, 19 I don't know the theological context that he is 20 drawing in this. I think -- I would have to think 21 about it, I'm not sure.</p> <p>22 Can I make a point? Again, in terms of 23 contrast. If that is seen as a problem, you 24 contrast that to Depchamski's quote, "Nothing in 25 biology makes sense outside the light of evolution."</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 244</p> <p>1 scientific community, is that we have just got a 2 body of just-so stories. You know? And that's a 3 problem that is recognized, that, you know, there is 4 a lot of conjecture and speculation.</p> <p>5 There have been -- you know, James 6 Shapiro has said that as well. I think it is 7 implied in Carl Woese's review article that I 8 provided in my expert opinion.</p> <p>9 Q. But do you think that statement would be 10 an accurate description of intelligent design 11 theory?</p> <p>12 A. Read it again. Again, I don't know the 13 context.</p> <p>14 Q. Let's forget about the context, because I 15 am going to be asking you these things without 16 quotes.</p> <p>17 Would you agree with the proposition that 18 intelligent design does not have a theory of 19 biological origins, just notions and intuitions?</p> <p>20 A. Theory of intelligent design?</p> <p>21 Q. Yes.</p> <p>22 A. In terms of origins, specifically 23 origins, is that what Paul is saying?</p> <p>24 MR. WHITE: Would you have him read it?</p> <p>25 THE WITNESS: I don't want to speculate</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 243</p> <p>1 I mean, that's a pretty dogmatic statement, too. 2 There are materialists that say, "Any other than a 3 materialistic viewpoint of nature is fundamentally 4 deficient."</p> <p>5 In one sense I see this as the antithesis 6 of statements that are coming out from a 7 materialist's world view. So in that respect, it's 8 a legitimate statement.</p> <p>9 Q. I am going to read you a quote from Paul 10 Nelson, which I don't know if we have it here or 11 not, but I am going to at least ask you to assume he 12 said it.</p> <p>13 MR. WHITE: Just for this whole line of 14 questioning, I just object on the basis of 15 relevancy.</p> <p>16 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>17 Q. Tell me if you agree or not. There is a 18 quote from Paul Nelson from Touchstone Magazine that 19 refers to intelligent design, and the quote is, "We 20 don't have a theory of biological origins, just 21 notions and intuitions." Assuming he made that 22 statement, would you agree or disagree with that?</p> <p>23 A. Similar evolutionists have made 24 statements like that. I mean, that has been a 25 criticism, my own self-criticism within the</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 245</p> <p>1 on something that I don't know the context in which 2 it is being written</p> <p>3 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>4 Q. Would you agree with the following 5 statement, "Intelligent design means that various 6 forms of life began abruptly through an intelligent 7 agency with their distinctive features already 8 intact: Fish with fins and scales, birds with 9 feathers, beaks, and wings," et cetera?</p> <p>10 A. Not completely, you know? No, no. I 11 mean, I think that's a pretty general statement in 12 terms of --</p> <p>13 Q. Tell me if you agree or disagree with the 14 following statement, "Who or what were man's 15 ancestors? The fossils surely don't give us any 16 conclusive ancestor. Darwinists are convinced that 17 homo erectus was nearly human and directly ancestral 18 to man. Design adherents, however, regard homo 19 erectus as well as other hominids in a discussion of 20 human ancestors as little more than apes and point 21 instead to the abrupt appearance of the culture and 22 patterns of behavior which distinguish man from 23 apes."</p> <p>24 MR. WHITE: I also object unless you let 25 him read that, it's unfair.</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 246</p> <p>1 THE WITNESS: You are asking me if I 2 agree with that statement? 3 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 4 Q. Yes. 5 A. Not completely. I'm not a 6 paleontologist, I'm not an expert in human 7 evolution. I do find it interesting, though, that 8 every time a new fossil is found, you know, the 9 general way in which it is presented is that, wow, 10 you know, we have got to go back and rewrite the 11 evolution of man, whether it is these new fossils 12 that were found in Micronesia, these new 13 contributions, all that tells me is that every time 14 a new set of fossils are found that require a 15 modification of human evolution is that we don't 16 know a whole lot about it, okay? 17 Q. Let me ask you if you would agree with 18 the following statement, "Design proponents point to 19 a role of intelligence in shaping clay into living 20 form." 21 A. You know, again, I don't know who wrote 22 this or what context it is. Salvador Luria, who is 23 a Nobel laureate at M.I.T., you know, in terms of his 24 hypotheses of the origin of life, incorporated the 25 idea that clay was the matrix on which original life</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 248</p> <p>1 MR. LUCHENITSER: Yes, we are looking at 2 the 1993 edition of Pandas and People. 3 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 4 Q. If you could flip to page 77. And the 5 quote I read, "Design proponents point to the role 6 of intelligence in shaping" -- somewhere on that 7 page, maybe you could help him find it. 8 (Off the record.) 9 THE WITNESS: Yes. I mean, in the 10 context of this, you know, it is a looking at 11 ancient myths in terms of -- let me just read it. 12 "A common explanation of origins in most 13 ancient cultures was creation by the Gods. On 14 closer inspection we see most of these ancient 15 creation myths were personifications of nature. 16 Even so, in the same data from antiquity, modern 17 views of intelligent design and macro evolution find 18 their ancient roots." 19 Okay, intelligent design and macro 20 evolution find their ancient roots. 21 "Design proponents point to the role of 22 intelligence in shaping clay into living form. 23 Evolutionists, on the other hand" -- and this is 24 Salvadore Luria that I mentioned before, and Karen 25 Smith, "point to the clay itself as the stuff of</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 247</p> <p>1 replicating forms originated. So even 2 non-intelligent design people look at clay as 3 playing a role in origins of life, okay? 4 Now, if that is taken right out of 5 Genesis in terms of, you know, God molded dirt or 6 clay into a human form, I don't know if that is a 7 literal interpretation. I think in the general 8 sense, since we are made of the same components of 9 the earth's crust, that it serves a purpose, that it 10 is not inconsistent with the idea that the designer 11 used materials that are available. But did he just 12 pick up a piece of clay and mold, you know, the 13 first human? I don't know. 14 Q. Let's get the context. Do you have the 15 book? 16 I am going to show you -- this is a copy 17 of the 1993 edition of Pandas and People. 18 A. Okay. 19 Q. I assume this is a book you want to keep 20 and not lose. 21 (Off the record.) 22 MR. LUCHENITSER: Is it okay if we don't 23 mark this as an exhibit? 24 MR. WHITE: That's fine. It's Pandas and 25 People, Second Edition, 1993; is that correct.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 249</p> <p>1 which life is spontaneously generated by nature, 2 stuff, which most of the time, was personified as a 3 god. Those two alternative concepts of origins does 4 have long histories extending from ancient times to 5 the present." 6 Earth material is the essence of human 7 beings. 8 Q. So is it your opinion that that statement 9 that you just read accurately reflects intelligent 10 design theory? 11 A. I think it is an accurate representation 12 in terms of how we view the origin of life and man 13 from both sides, that clay is an integral part. It 14 is interesting that this is also in ancient myths 15 that, you know, anthropomorphise nature: 16 Yes, so I think they are just pointing to 17 commonalities in the role of inorganic as a source 18 of life. 19 Q. Have you ever been retained as an expert 20 witness in litigation before? Have you ever served 21 as an expert witness? 22 A. No. 23 Q. Have you ever testified about intelligent 24 design theory or about evolution in any kind of 25 public context, such as before legislative body or</p>

63 (Pages 246 to 249)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 250</p> <p>1 before a school board or administrative body?</p> <p>2 A. From a private school board. I mentioned</p> <p>3 before, when they were reviewing -- from a local</p> <p>4 Christian school that was reviewing their biology</p> <p>5 curriculum. On my recommendation they incorporated</p> <p>6 Ken Miller's book and this book as well and got rid</p> <p>7 of their -- I think it was Bob Jones University</p> <p>8 curriculum that I thought was, you know, just over</p> <p>9 the edge.</p> <p>10 Q. So they incorporated both Ken Miller's</p> <p>11 book and Of Pandas and People as --</p> <p>12 A. Ken Miller's book as their primary</p> <p>13 biology text. This is what I find ironic, that you</p> <p>14 find most parochial schools and private religious</p> <p>15 schools studying evolution intently with the</p> <p>16 materials that are available that the secular</p> <p>17 schools are using, and looking at it and analyzing</p> <p>18 it critically. And, you know, this local Christian</p> <p>19 school brings in biology professors on occasion and</p> <p>20 says, "All right, you have an hour, convince us."</p> <p>21 It is great, you know? I think it is</p> <p>22 really a valuable tool for these kids.</p> <p>23 Q. So Pandas and People is a supplemental</p> <p>24 text in that school?</p> <p>25 A. Yes.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 252</p> <p>1 about the face of the document, not behind.</p> <p>2 THE WITNESS: Yes, I don't want to get</p> <p>3 into that, I don't know what the stipulation covers.</p> <p>4 I don't think it will become an issue.</p> <p>5 But what did I do to prepare it?</p> <p>6 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>7 Q. Yes.</p> <p>8 A. I mean, there was a deadline involved, as</p> <p>9 I recall, and there wasn't a great amount of time to</p> <p>10 invest. So I think I spent a total of 12 hours</p> <p>11 sitting down on my computer, typing, revising,</p> <p>12 thinking, you know, and then submitted it.</p> <p>13 Q. So is that the total amount of work that</p> <p>14 you did in order to prepare the report? Was that</p> <p>15 just the time you spent writing it or --</p> <p>16 A. I did it over the course of probably a</p> <p>17 week and a half, but the actual time that I</p> <p>18 committed to this, which I was keeping track of just</p> <p>19 for remuneration aspects, was probably about 12</p> <p>20 hours.</p> <p>21 Q. And did you review any documents before</p> <p>22 starting to write your report?</p> <p>23 A. I had written my report and I consulted</p> <p>24 some of the references, some of these books just to</p> <p>25 clarify some of my positions, the semantics that I</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 251</p> <p>1 Q. Can you tell me how you first got</p> <p>2 involved in this case, this litigation?</p> <p>3 A. I was called up by one of the attorneys</p> <p>4 at Thomas More and asked if I would provide expert</p> <p>5 witness that -- I think they said Mike Behe had</p> <p>6 recommended that I would be a potential witness for</p> <p>7 it, and that was my contact.</p> <p>8 Q. Do you remember approximately when you</p> <p>9 were first contacted by Thomas More about this</p> <p>10 lawsuit?</p> <p>11 A. I don't know a specific date. I have it</p> <p>12 on my computer, I could go back and look at my e-</p> <p>13 mails and I can approximate it.</p> <p>14 Q. Did you have any interactions with any of</p> <p>15 the officials of the Dover School District before</p> <p>16 you were retained as an expert?</p> <p>17 A. No.</p> <p>18 Q. Can you tell me what you did in order to</p> <p>19 prepare your expert report?</p> <p>20 MR. WHITE: Now, just so we are clear,</p> <p>21 communications with counsel, that's all privileged</p> <p>22 based on our stipulation.</p> <p>23 MR. LUCHENITSER: Whatever the</p> <p>24 stipulation is.</p> <p>25 MR. WHITE: Right, so we are just talking</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 253</p> <p>1 wanted.</p> <p>2 Are you asking if I looked at any of the</p> <p>3 other expert witness reports?</p> <p>4 Q. Did you look at a --</p> <p>5 MR. WHITE: Like a court file? What are</p> <p>6 you talking about?</p> <p>7 THE WITNESS: I had the complaint.</p> <p>8 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>9 Q. Yes, did you look at the complaint?</p> <p>10 A. I looked at the complaint.</p> <p>11 Q. Did you look at the answer?</p> <p>12 A. The answer --</p> <p>13 Q. The defendant's answer in the litigation.</p> <p>14 A. I didn't spend a lot of time with it,</p> <p>15 because it would say point whatever this or that,</p> <p>16 and I didn't have the time to go back and look at</p> <p>17 what point are they talking about: He said this and</p> <p>18 it is referenced in -- you know? I didn't.</p> <p>19 Q. Did you read a copy of the statement that</p> <p>20 is the statement that the Dover School District</p> <p>21 officials read to the students?</p> <p>22 A. I did. I didn't study it, but I read it.</p> <p>23 Q. Did you read any of the other expert</p> <p>24 reports prepared on behalf of the defendants?</p> <p>25 A. I don't recall if I had already submitted</p>

64 (Pages 250 to 253)

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 254</p> <p>1 mine and one of the attorneys from Thomas More sent 2 me Mike Behe's report or that was just when I was 3 finishing mine up in terms of the format of how I 4 wanted it to look in terms of how this stuff was 5 being done in other reports. 6 So I don't recall. Certainly I wrote 7 this, and after I was just about done I looked at 8 Mike Behe and thought, is this the amount of content 9 that they want? Are these the subject areas that 10 are pertinent? This is my first experience, so I 11 didn't even know what the format of an expert report 12 was. I think I asked to see in terms of how it is 13 organized, do you put subheadings in it? How do you 14 reference information and journals, et cetera? So 15 it was more for format.</p> <p>16 Q. After you were done with your report did 17 you review any of the other expert reports that -- 18 A. I have looked at a few of them. I have 19 -- I don't know if I have all of them, but I haven't 20 had time to read them in depth.</p> <p>21 Q. Do you disagree with anything stated in 22 any of the other expert reports filed on behalf of 23 the defendants?</p> <p>24 MR. WHITE: Are you talking about 25 defendant experts or plaintiff's experts?</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 256</p> <p>1 (Recess taken.) 2 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 3 Q. Are you also being represented by the 4 Alliance Defense Fund in this case? 5 A. No. 6 Q. Can you tell me who is paying your fees? 7 A. I don't really know. Is it Thomas More? 8 MR. WHITE: You are talking about his 9 expert fees? 10 MR. LUCHENITSER: Yes. 11 THE WITNESS: I am assuming it is Thomas 12 More. 13 MR. WHITE: He is retained by us. 14 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 15 Q. Let's see, now, on page one of your 16 report, somewhere you say, "Proponents of evolution 17 recognize, as they must, the significant gaps in 18 problems with the theory of evolution"? 19 A. Where are we? 20 Q. We're on page two, actually. 21 A. At the bottom of the page? 22 Q. Yes, see at the bottom of the page, the 23 last paragraph at the bottom. 24 A. Right. 25 Q. Can you tell me what gaps you are</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 255</p> <p>1 MR. LUCHENITSER: Yes, defendant experts 2 only. 3 THE WITNESS: You mean people on my side 4 of the aisle? 5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER: 6 Q. Yes. 7 A. Not anything overtly that, you know, I 8 have a gut reaction against. 9 Q. Is there anything specific you remember 10 that you disagreed with? 11 MR. WHITE: Do you want to establish 12 which one he has looked at, if any of them? 13 THE WITNESS: Yes. I have looked at Mike 14 Behe's but I haven't read it in detail. I have Bill 15 Dembski's that I have read about half of. I agree 16 with most of what he has presented. I agree with 17 Mike's analysis of the theory and how it is just a 18 definition of a theory and how it is used in 19 different contexts. 20 Who else? I don't know. I mean -- I 21 haven't read the ones from the educators that are 22 involved. 23 MR. WHITE: Did you also ask about the 24 plaintiff's, Alex, or did you just say defendants? 25 MR. LUCHENITSER: Just the defendants.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 257</p> <p>1 referring to? 2 A. In terms of the gaps in the fossil 3 record, in terms of the gaps in our understanding of 4 synchronizing geological clocks with molecular 5 clocks. These are all inherent in the articles that 6 are referenced in my report. Simon Conway Morris, I 7 mean, the whole article deals with problems of 8 evolution. Carl Woese alludes to these as well. So 9 this isn't anything that isn't in the peer reviewed 10 literature. 11 Q. When you are referring to problems, are 12 you referring to something different from gaps or 13 are you referring to the same thing? Or are you 14 referring to problems with evolution? 15 A. Problems in terms of intermediates, both 16 at the molecular and the macro stage, developmental 17 programs. 18 Let me give you an example. In a 19 quotation on page three, by an article out of Nature 20 that is co-authored by one of the expert individuals 21 on the complaint side, Robert Pennock. 22 "From the outset, Darwin realized that 23 'organs of extreme perfection and complication,'" 24 and this is a quote, from Paley, such as the eye 25 posed a difficulty for his theory. Such features</p>

65 (Pages 254 to 257)

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 258</p> <p>1 are much too complex to appear de novo, and he 2 reasoned that they must evolve by incremental 3 transitions through many intermediate states, 4 sometimes undergoing changes in function. There now 5 exists substantial evidence concerning the evolution 6 of complex features that supports Darwin's general 7 model. Nonetheless," and this is my emphasis, "it 8 is difficult to provide a complete account of the 9 origin of any complex feature owing to the 10 extinction of intermediate forms, imperfection of 11 the fossil record, and incomplete knowledge of the 12 genetic and developmental mechanisms that produce 13 such features."</p> <p>14 Q. What is the basis of your knowledge about 15 the gaps and problems with evolution that you refer 16 to?</p> <p>17 A. Well, I mean, that's it. I mean, we 18 don't have --</p> <p>19 Q. Is it this article?</p> <p>20 A. No, I am saying the highlighted aspects 21 of Darwinian theory which are reliant upon fossil 22 records that is consistent with gradual evolution 23 are transitional forms, homology studies that can 24 trace the phylogenetic history of subcellular 25 organelles or components, genomic analysis in terms</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 260</p> <p>1 identification.)</p> <p>2 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>3 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 17 an article 4 entitled: Mitochondrial Evolution, by Michael Gray, 5 Gertraud Gurges, and B. Franz Lang. Is this an 6 article you have ever seen before?</p> <p>7 A. I haven't read it.</p> <p>8 Q. So if you could, look at page 1478, the 9 highlighted portion.</p> <p>10 A. Right, phylogenetic relationships among 11 mitochondria and alpha-Proteobacteria.</p> <p>12 Q. If this article provides -- if it is the 13 case that this article, Phylogenetic History for 14 Mitochondria, would that change your opinion that 15 you express in your report that we have no 16 phylogenetic history of single biochemical pathways 17 as a --</p> <p>18 A. I don't think this is a defined 19 phylogenetic history, I think this is based on 20 sequence comparisons, and there are inherent 21 assumptions built into that system.</p> <p>22 No, I don't -- I would read this, but I 23 don't think this is a definitive historical account 24 of the evolution of mitochondria. It is a 25 hypothesis based on sequence comparisons.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 259</p> <p>1 of comparing organisms that are related or closely 2 related and accounting for information that is not 3 present in either, genetic and developmental 4 mechanisms that produce complicated structures.</p> <p>5 Q. My question is, what is your basis for 6 your knowledge about these things you have just been 7 referring to?</p> <p>8 A. I am a biologist, okay? I am a molecular 9 geneticist. I have done developmental biology 10 before in terms of dissecting these complex features 11 in organelles. And I don't know any of my 12 colleagues that can come up with a defined mechanism 13 or scenario whereby they are able to appear simply 14 under the neo-Darwinian theory. Okay? There is a 15 lot of speculation and conjecture.</p> <p>16 Q. Thank you. Are you aware of -- well, you 17 make a statement at the bottom of page two, "We have 18 no phylogenetic history of a single biochemical 19 pathway or subcellular organelle."</p> <p>20 Are you aware of any published articles 21 that have provided such histories?</p> <p>22 A. No, I mean, that's a statement by James 23 Shapiro at the University of Chicago who is a not an 24 intelligent design expert.</p> <p>25 (Deposition Exhibit No. 17 marked for</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 261</p> <p>1 Q. Let's go to page three of your report. 2 You say, "Proponents of Darwin's theory of 3 evolution," this is like after a long quote. You 4 say, "Thus, the proponents of Darwin's theory of 5 evolution assume that evolution is true, even though 6 we lack the intermediate structures, we lack 7 fossils, and we do not have adequate knowledge of 8 how natural selection can introduce novel genetic 9 information."</p> <p>10 Now, when you say, "We lack the 11 intermediate structures, we lack fossils," are you 12 speaking only about microbiological systems or are 13 you also referring to fossils and intermediate 14 structures with respect to complex animals?</p> <p>15 A. From a legal perspective I can see where 16 you are going, because you've established that I am 17 not a paleontologist, I am not, but this is from the 18 general scientific reading, Stephen J. Gould, other 19 people that I have read, that have acknowledged, in 20 Simon Conway Morris's article, that is really 21 rephrasing of the statement above, right?</p> <p>22 What I see Lenski saying is, we know 23 evolution is true but we don't have a complete 24 account of any complex feature owing to the 25 extinction of intermediate forms.</p>

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 262</p> <p>1 Let's go back, I want to clarify this 2 paper here on mitochondrial evolution. This is 3 written –</p> <p>4 MR. WHITE: Just to clarify, Exhibit 17.</p> <p>5 THE WITNESS: Exhibit 17. You are saying 6 this is a phylogenetic genetic history, this was 7 published in 1999. Here is Lenski and Pennock 8 saying, in 2003, that we don't have the complete 9 origin of any complex feature, which would include a 10 mitochondria, owing to the extinction of 11 intermediate forms, et cetera, et cetera.</p> <p>12 So what does that mean? This is a 13 contradiction that you are -- it's in the 14 literature. This is making an assertion. I haven't 15 read this paper and come to the context of what they 16 are basing their phylogenetic history on in Exhibit 17 17.</p> <p>18 But you tell me how you can have these 19 two statements in peer reviewed literature and they 20 are consistent.</p> <p>21 Q. Let me ask you, the statement you are 22 quoting from the Lenski article is that he is saying 23 it is difficult to provide a complete account of the 24 origin of any complex feature. Is that the same 25 thing as saying that there is no phylogenetic</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 264</p> <p>1 hopeful monsters that can be produced by mutations 2 and homeotic genes, and we can make these quantum 3 leaps in body plans. 4 So in part, trying to account for the 5 lack of information, you hypothesize that, well, 6 they never were there in the first place, we can 7 make these grand transitional leaps based on 8 rearrangements or mutations and homeotic genes that 9 are dictating body structure and plan. Okay? In 10 part to address this problem. That's in the peer 11 reviewed literature.</p> <p>12 Q. Now, when evolutionary biologists do 13 identify intermediate structures between various 14 kinds of species, aren't there always going to be 15 other intermediate structures that are missing in 16 between what has been identified?</p> <p>17 A. In a sense you can play that game of 18 infinite regression. But at this point I don't 19 think it is necessary to evoke that, you know?</p> <p>20 Q. And can you explain what you mean by the 21 game of infinite regression?</p> <p>22 A. In other words, where did that 23 intermediate come from and where did that 24 intermediate come from, and, you know, a complete 25 lineage. We have such gaps, you know, at this point</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 263</p> <p>1 history at all for any biochemical pathway or 2 subcellular organelle?</p> <p>3 A. Combine that with other statements. 4 Again, James Shapiro, I can't remember -- I can't 5 recall the guy's name, he is a professor emeritus at 6 Colorado State University, that has also written in 7 journals, microbiology journals, stating the same 8 thing. We don't have the phylogenetic history of 9 any subcellular organelle, all we have is a lot of 10 speculation, okay? I mean, do you agree with 11 that? I guess I shouldn't ask you, you are not part 12 of this. Okay. 13 I mean, as a scientist, this is not in 14 conflict with my colleagues in terms of what we know 15 and understand.</p> <p>16 Q. Let's go back to this question of 17 intermediate structures. When you say we lack 18 intermediate structures, do you mean that there are 19 no intermediate structures at all?</p> <p>20 A. There are some. Those are the exception, 21 not the rule. There are individuals that are 22 evolutionists that are quoted in Simon Conway 23 Morris's article that have gone so far to account 24 for the lack of intermediates saying, well, in 25 actuality they don't exist because we have these</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 265</p> <p>1 -- we have been searching for fossils for a pretty 2 long time, and the intermediates are the exception, 3 not the rule, and they are generally in the same 4 group of organisms. Okay, and this is driving in 5 part evolutionary biologists and it is causing 6 problems.</p> <p>7 Q. What level of intermediate structures 8 would satisfy you?</p> <p>9 A. I mean, I would have to think about it. 10 It is going to be a body of evidence that is going 11 to convince me. I'm not going to -- give me a true 12 phylogenetic history that is not based on 13 interpretation or that has been allowed to be 14 examined critically by people on both sides of this 15 issue.</p> <p>16 Q. Is it feasible that the fossil record 17 will ever become detailed enough to satisfy you that 18 evolutionary theory is correct and intelligent 19 design is wrong?</p> <p>20 A. That's speculation. I mean, on a present 21 track record, it doesn't look like it.</p> <p>22 Q. And might that be because there aren't 23 enough surviving fossils to be able to make the 24 reconstruction that you would be happy with?</p> <p>25 A. That's a question that implies a certain</p>

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 266</p> <p>1 interpretation. Not surviving fossils, implying 2 that they were there at one time and weren't 3 preserved, or the fact that they never were there in 4 the first place. Regardless, if you don't have the 5 data, you can't make the conjecture. Okay? Whereas 6 you have to recognize that you are dealing with 7 speculation.</p> <p>8 Q. Let's assume hypothetically that we are 9 not -- that science isn't going to find a whole lot 10 more fossils just because they have been destroyed, 11 because they haven't survived. How could it be 12 possible for anybody to then make a conclusion as to 13 whether evolution theory is correct or whether 14 intelligent design theory is correct?</p> <p>15 A. Well, if you go by the data and you say, 16 what does the fossil record -- what is it most 17 consistent with? You know, from my understanding of 18 the fossil record, stasis is the norm, okay? Change 19 over time.</p> <p>20 There is a fossil bed 40 miles to the 21 east of us in Clarkia, Idaho that you can walk out 22 there and pay five bucks to a guy that is running a 23 motor-cross field, pick up a piece of shale, crack 24 it open, and you have got magnolia leaves that are 25 so well preserved that they are still green that are</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 268</p> <p>1 the recognition by evolutionists that they have a 2 problem. This is implicit in some of the papers I 3 have quoted in my expert report. I don't think 4 it is an area of contention. We are missing 5 intermediates, it's a problem.</p> <p>6 Q. Now, you also say in that same statement 7 we have been talking about, "We do not have adequate 8 knowledge of how natural selection can introduce 9 novel genetic information." Are you aware of any 10 scientific literature that does explain how natural 11 selection can introduce such information?</p> <p>12 A. I am aware of the immune system that is 13 referenced in Exhibit 7, which we haven't discussed. 14 At one point this is the exception in which you can 15 generate novel amino acid sequences in the immune 16 system, where you can scramble genes as cassettes 17 and have differential gene splicing and get 18 components of proteins that are then spliced 19 together that have different sequences.</p> <p>20 Q. So is it correct, then, that natural 21 selection can introduce novel genetic information in 22 some circumstances?</p> <p>23 A. That's not what I said. That's not 24 saying that natural selection produced this. In 25 fact, the immune system is a very dangerous system.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 267</p> <p>1 dated at 20 million years old. You can isolate by 2 PCR mitochondrial DNA and compare it to magnolia 3 mitochondrial DNA and there isn't a whole lot of 4 difference. That's a long time.</p> <p>5 So I am saying stasis -- Darwin predicts 6 that this is a gradual transition. With that 7 prediction is that there should be a gradual 8 blending of forms all across the board, and you 9 don't find that. You find, again, forms that we 10 find presently.</p> <p>11 Turtles, you can go back a long time in 12 the geologic record and find things that looked like 13 turtles, trees, etcetera, insects that you can 14 identify through the species.</p> <p>15 Q. Now, the statement you made about the 16 fossil record, is that based on any personal review 17 or analysis of the fossil record?</p> <p>18 A. This is from my knowledge of reading that 19 I think is substantiated by peer reviewed 20 literature, by knowledge of work that I know my 21 colleagues are doing here at the University of 22 Idaho, okay? But, no, I am not a paleontologist and 23 I'm the first to admit it. I'm not an expert in 24 that field.</p> <p>25 But there is public evidence, there is</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 269</p> <p>1 Anytime you have this novel scrambling of DNA 2 sequences, it has got to be fairly controlled or it 3 can be a problem. I look at the immune system as an 4 incredibly engineered system that has, you know, 5 anticipatory foresight in terms of the organisms 6 that possess them.</p> <p>7 (Deposition Exhibit No. 18 marked for 8 identification.)</p> <p>9 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>10 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 18 an article 11 by Manyuan Long, Esther Betran, et al, entitled: 12 The Origin of New Genes: Glimpses From The Young 13 And Old. Is this an article you have ever seen?</p> <p>14 A. I haven't read this one. I would like 15 to, though.</p> <p>16 Q. From the abstract in the article can you 17 tell whether you are familiar with the work 18 described in the article?</p> <p>19 A. Can I read it?</p> <p>20 Q. The article or just --</p> <p>21 A. No, no, the abstract.</p> <p>22 Q. Oh, sure.</p> <p>23 A. "Genome data have revealed great 24 variation in the numbers of genes in different 25 organisms, which indicates that there is a</p>

68 (Pages 266 to 269)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 270</p> <p>1 fundamental process of genome evolution."</p> <p>2 That's an assumption. The origin of new</p> <p>3 genes. "However, there has been little opportunity</p> <p>4 to explore how genes with new functions originate</p> <p>5 and evolve. The study of ancient genes has</p> <p>6 highlighted the antiquity and general importance of</p> <p>7 some mechanisms of gene origination, and recent</p> <p>8 observation of young genes at early stages in their</p> <p>9 evolution have unveiled unexpected molecular and</p> <p>10 evolutionary processes."</p> <p>11 Okay, I would know -- if I sat down and</p> <p>12 read this I could do a critique of this in terms of</p> <p>13 a different interpretation from a design</p> <p>14 perspective, or a limitation of the application of</p> <p>15 this, I think. I am making that assumption.</p> <p>16 Q. But you are not familiar with the</p> <p>17 specific work that Long and Betran describes?</p> <p>18 A. No.</p> <p>19 Q. Now, you said -- on page four of your</p> <p>20 report you say that the flagellum is the most</p> <p>21 efficient machine in the universe, that's the second</p> <p>22 sentence on page four, "People working on the</p> <p>23 bacterial flagellum" --</p> <p>24 A. Right, Howard Berg gave that in a seminar</p> <p>25 at W.S.U. in 1989 in which I was in the audience.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 272</p> <p>1 referring to here is the chemotaxis process, which</p> <p>2 is a random walk which is, you know, a very, very</p> <p>3 primitive sensory transducing system. This isn't</p> <p>4 referring to the motor itself, this is referring to</p> <p>5 the mechanism in which this motor is hard-wired to</p> <p>6 the chemotaxis system, which if -- and I am looking</p> <p>7 at the random walk up here in terms of tracking</p> <p>8 bacteria as they are taxing towards a stimulant</p> <p>9 that, yes, in one sense it is inefficient because</p> <p>10 you don't have, you know, a camera eye to look at</p> <p>11 the environment nor the neuron capacity to process</p> <p>12 that information. This is a phosphor relay system.</p> <p>13 But I will add here, that this process is</p> <p>14 inefficient, but given the primitiveness of it, it</p> <p>15 is incredible in terms of how well fine-tuned it is</p> <p>16 to the environment. Bacteria are extremely small,</p> <p>17 on the order of micrometers in size, okay? They are</p> <p>18 subject to brown emotion, which means that just the</p> <p>19 molecular vibration of the environment can have an</p> <p>20 effect in terms the movement of these organisms.</p> <p>21 E. coli is faced with a problem of, you</p> <p>22 know, there is probably an amino acid here that this</p> <p>23 organism is chemotaxing towards. It wants to run</p> <p>24 its flagella, once it is oriented in the right</p> <p>25 direction, toward that source of food. So, are you</p>
<p style="text-align: right;">Page 271</p> <p>1 Q. And is Mr. Berg an expert on the</p> <p>2 flagellum?</p> <p>3 A. Yes, a biophysicist, he's at Harvard</p> <p>4 University.</p> <p>5 MR. LUCHENITSER: Let me have this</p> <p>6 marked.</p> <p>7 (Deposition Exhibit No. 19 marked for</p> <p>8 identification.)</p> <p>9 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>10 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 19 an article</p> <p>11 on Physics Today on the web. It is a feature</p> <p>12 article, Motile Behavior of Bacteria, by Howard</p> <p>13 Berg. And if you could flip to page six, and the</p> <p>14 page number is in the lower left-hand corner of the</p> <p>15 article -- I may be looking in the wrong place.</p> <p>16 If you look at the first paragraph at the</p> <p>17 top of the page, not the stuff in small type, the</p> <p>18 paragraph starting with, "Flagellar mechanics." At</p> <p>19 the end of the paragraph it says, "This scheme may</p> <p>20 not be very efficient, but it works."</p> <p>21 So is Mr. Berg saying that the flagellum</p> <p>22 is not in fact very efficient?</p> <p>23 MR. WHITE: If you would allow Professor</p> <p>24 Minnich time to read this.</p> <p>25 THE WITNESS: I think what he is</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 273</p> <p>1 following my argument?</p> <p>2 The problem is that brown emotion, over</p> <p>3 the course of four seconds, is going to deflect its</p> <p>4 motion 60 degrees off its original track. And that</p> <p>5 if you go longer than four seconds, that your</p> <p>6 direction towards what you have perceived as a</p> <p>7 source of, you know, the highest concentration of</p> <p>8 gradient to amino acid you want is over there, it</p> <p>9 suddenly becomes irrelevant and you have been pushed</p> <p>10 off course by brown emotion.</p> <p>11 The chemotaxis system is fine tuned so</p> <p>12 that the half life of all these proteins that are</p> <p>13 guiding that process is on the order of two to four</p> <p>14 seconds, so that after that time period you make --</p> <p>15 you know, E. coli is faced with this decision: I</p> <p>16 have receptors on my surface that are looking for</p> <p>17 what I want to eat, okay? I have got to take as</p> <p>18 many samples as I can over the longest period I can</p> <p>19 so that I can make a decision to go in that</p> <p>20 direction. If I wait too long, then my decision is</p> <p>21 irrelevant because I am pushed off course by brown</p> <p>22 emotion.</p> <p>23 The system is fine tuned and extremely</p> <p>24 efficient given the parameters to ensure that E.</p> <p>25 coli can wipe the slate, reverse its engines.</p>

69 (Pages 270 to 273)

Page 274

1 tumble, and then start off in a new direction.
 2 Again, I haven't read this. In reaction
 3 the cell body translates and rolls, so there is
 4 torque with these engines that can also -- you know,
 5 is a problem with aircraft engines, you know? The
 6 old radial engines that the torque driving it could
 7 also pitch an aircraft in the direction in which the
 8 propeller is rotating, and that has a problem in
 9 terms of staying on course.

10 (Deposition Exhibit No. 20 marked for
 11 identification.)

12 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:

13 Q. We have marked as Exhibit 20 an article
 14 by Edward Purcell from October 14, 1997. Let me
 15 draw your attention to an abstract at the top in
 16 smaller type which apparently was written by Berg.
 17 And there is a highlighted passage there that says
 18 the, "The propulsion efficiency cannot exceed 3
 19 percent under any circumstances, and with more
 20 realistic values he estimated a maximum of 1.7
 21 percent."

22 Does that contradict your opinion that
 23 the flagellum is the most efficient engine --

24 A. That's -- I am quoting Howard Berg, you
 25 know, in terms of how he looked at it. I think

Page 276

1 that Professor Minnich just read was on his expert
 2 report, was it not?

3 THE WITNESS: Right. So, you know, I
 4 would like to read this and get the context, but --
 5 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:

6 Q. We can come back to that at trial.

7 You said the flagellum is water cooled,
 8 can you explain what you mean by water cooled?

9 A. I mean, again, that's based on Howard
 10 Berg's description of it. I mean, these organisms
 11 are growing, for the most part, in a liquid
 12 environment. They can be rotating at up to a
 13 hundred-thousand rpm's. I don't know how much
 14 frictional force or heat that generates, but it has
 15 been said that they are water cooled.

16 Q. Do you know what protein in flagellum are
 17 responsible for that cooling system?

18 A. No, I don't. It could be just the fact
 19 that you are in a liquid environment and there is
 20 water flowing freely through the membrane and this
 21 is playing a part in terms of dissipation of heat.

22 Q. Okay, on page six, let's see, where is
 23 it? In the middle of --

24 A. Can I clarify one thing, too? Going back
 25 to this efficiency and the language that has been

Page 275

1 looking at it holistically in terms of the fact that
 2 it's a self-assembling motor, it's got all the
 3 components that we find in a true engine that is
 4 water-cooled, it has two directions, two gears
 5 forward and reverse, you know, a true propeller, et
 6 cetera, is run on battery power, in terms of the
 7 fact that you can have an engine that can
 8 self-assemble, that's pretty efficient.

9 In terms of the propulsion, I don't know
 10 in terms of the context, I haven't read this paper.
 11 So we may be talking about about two different things
 12 here. I don't want to confuse the issue. I'm not
 13 sure it's fair to pull this out and talk about
 14 efficiency, efficiency of what?

15 You know, one of the articles that I
 16 cite, Kinoshita in Cell on page four, talking about
 17 another rotary engine, and he says that the
 18 efficiency of this motor, quoting directly, "If one
 19 ATP is consumed per 120 degree turn, as one may
 20 anticipate from the make of this motor, the
 21 efficiency is nearly 100 percent, far superior to a
 22 Honda V6."

23 So again, I want to clarify the context,
 24 that we are talking about the bacterial flagellum.

25 MR. WHITE: For the record, the quote

Page 277

1 used in the past in terms of describing the machines
 2 that are in discussion here.

3 I find it interesting that 10 or 15 years
 4 ago these words like highly efficient, you know,
 5 most efficient, you know, esoteric words like
 6 beautiful, et cetera, fine tuned, well designed, in
 7 the literature are now being replaced with things
 8 like, "Well, this is a Rubic Goldberg apparatus," or,
 9 "This is sloppy," you know?

10 Mark Ptashne, in his book The Genetic
 11 Switch, in describing the repressor of Landa
 12 protein, said this is exactly -- you know, he says,
 13 all the parameters that are required for the
 14 expression of the genes he is talking about is
 15 exactly what you would do to design a repressor.

16 And now, I think, getting caught by that
 17 language, I find my colleagues going back and using
 18 this. Now Mark Ptashne looks at Landa repressor as,
 19 you know, a sloppy system, just what you would
 20 expect as an undirected, unintelligent driving force
 21 producing it.

22 Our knowledge of Landa repressors hasn't
 23 changed, you know? But the language we are using
 24 is. I find this in the literature, and it is
 25 perplexing to me in terms of why suddenly people are

70 (Pages 274 to 277)

Page 278

1 changing their view. I think it is because of the
 2 fact that the language that we have used to describe
 3 these systems in the past is very descriptive
 4 teleologically, efficiency, engineering, the same
 5 language you would be describing intelligent design
 6 processes.

7 Q. You say on page six, the first paragraph
 8 after the quote, "The fact of the matter is that the
 9 scientific evidence for real design is
 10 overwhelming." Now, if that's the case, why is
 11 evolution and not intelligent design not the
 12 dominant scientific theory of the developing
 13 science?

14 A. That's a good question. Like I said, I
 15 asked my colleagues, "Given all of our admittance
 16 that these things have the appearance of design, why
 17 won't you even entertain the idea that it is real
 18 design?"

19 And the response overwhelmingly is that
 20 they don't like metaphysical implications. This is
 21 a human response, it's a religious response, it's a
 22 philosophical response, it's no different than
 23 Einstein looking at the implications of his
 24 equations and saying, whoa, the universe isn't
 25 static. And that is loaded with metaphysical

Page 280

1 course of about 45 minutes, Well, if this is your
 2 hypothesis, that you can take a painted piece of
 3 glass and put it over a piece of linen and with the
 4 sun rotating across the horizon, can imprint an
 5 image that -- you need to do controls, you know?
 6 You need do -- if you think the sun, as it is
 7 changing across the horizon, is blending the image,
 8 do the same experiment and abase it with a sun
 9 lamp. Do it horizontally, et cetera. And that was
 10 my limit in those experiments.

11 Q. Did those experiments in any way
 12 influence your thinking about intelligent design
 13 theory?

14 A. No, no. But I think it is -- again, you
 15 are looking at a phenomenon and asking the question,
 16 is this real, is this a supernatural event, or is
 17 there a natural way that you can explain it? And
 18 I'm all for saying, all right, this guy has a theory
 19 for a natural explanation that nobody has looked at
 20 before and do it. You know, I don't have a problem
 21 with that.

22 Q. Let's go back to page one of your report.
 23 And you say --

24 A. Can I clarify one thing? I was in Iraq
 25 when these experiments were actually performed and

Page 279

1 ramifications. So, you know, it is dangerous stuff.
 2 Q. When you use the word overwhelming, do
 3 you think you might have used too strong a word
 4 there?

5 A. Oh, I am -- you know, perhaps. But
 6 Francis Crick says, looking at nature you have to
 7 continually convince yourself, I am paraphrasing
 8 him, that what you are seeing is not designed, okay?
 9 Why? Why do you have to convince
 10 yourself that what you are seeing is not designed?
 11 Maybe it really is. Why aren't you willing to
 12 entertain that idea and why isn't it a legitimate
 13 avenue of inquiry? Why can't we develop mechanisms
 14 to differentiate real design from the products of
 15 natural laws?

16 Q. Is it correct that you have done some
 17 experiments on the Turan shroud?

18 A. Oh, no. I was --

19 Q. You helped design experiments; is that
 20 correct?

21 A. I was kind of an informal -- I wouldn't
 22 even say a consultant, an advisor to a guy that was
 23 interested in coming up with a natural explanation
 24 for what people have assumed is a supernatural
 25 product, and just illustrated or outlined, in the

Page 281

1 had no input other than that.

2 Q. Let's go to page two, the top of page
 3 two, the third full sentence: "Evolution is such a
 4 broad discipline that it has in reality played only
 5 a minor role in experimental science."

6 A. Carl Woese says that, Simon Conway Morris
 7 also, you know, refers to that in his paper, and
 8 these are Microbiology and Molecular Biology reviews
 9 and the other one is in Cell.

10 Q. Are those two papers the primary basis of
 11 that statement that you make there?

12 A. No, I mean, again, it goes back to my own
 13 experience. I have been a contributor to my
 14 discipline, I never once took a course in evolution
 15 that has been required. I haven't gone to the bench
 16 and used any principle of evolution in designing and
 17 carrying out an experiment, nor, when I ask my
 18 colleagues, they haven't either.

19 Q. Now, did the scientific theory of
 20 evolution play any role in the discovery of
 21 heredity?

22 A. It would have been found regardless of
 23 whatever paradigm was invoked. The question -- you
 24 know, who discovered heredity and when was that
 25 discovered? In the eighteen-sixties, the same time

71 (Pages 278 to 281)

<p style="text-align: center;">Page 282</p> <p>1 Darwin was writing his book, Gregor Mendel was doing 2 his experiments on peas and inheritance in peas. He 3 is a Catholic priest. So, no, he didn't know about 4 evolution.</p> <p>5 Q. What about the discovery of genes, did 6 the theory of evolution in any way aid in that 7 discovery?</p> <p>8 A. I think retrospectively. But again, this 9 was a question, a major question that was driving 10 biology, you know, in terms of what is the nature of 11 the gene, what is life? Schroedinger's book as a 12 physicist asking, "Can we describe inheritance in 13 chemical and physical properties?" It doesn't say 14 anything whether or not it was an evolved entity or 15 not.</p> <p>16 Q. Does the scientific theory of evolution 17 play any role in medicine?</p> <p>18 A. I teach in the medical program here, you 19 know, for med students from Idaho that are in the 20 University of Washington program. So we have 20 21 slots, W.S.U. — or Washington has 20 slots. So I 22 teach infectious disease to close to 40 medical 23 students.</p> <p>24 I am not aware that evolution is an 25 integral part of their scientific training. We can</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 284</p> <p>1 resistance can present itself in the compensatory 2 mutations necessary to give that organism in the 3 niche of a mammalian host the ability to compete. 4 Okay?</p> <p>5 So I think there are components that are 6 involved in micro adaptation and looking at these 7 things from a design perspective that could have 8 been implicated long ago.</p> <p>9 In part I think this is where evolution 10 can impede science, because you look at antibiotic 11 resistance, it appears, what are we going to do? 12 We've got to go get another drug?</p> <p>13 No, I think you could pull things off. 14 recognize there is a fitness cost with it before 15 these compensatory mutations then appear locking 16 that organism into that environment and maintain the 17 use of these antibiotics for a longer period of 18 time.</p> <p>19 (Off the record.)</p> <p>20 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>21 Q. Can natural selection and random 22 mutation, can those processes improve organisms or 23 can they only lead to the degeneration of organisms 24 or design forms?</p> <p>25 A. Can natural selection lead to the</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Page 283</p> <p>1 use evolution studies in terms of designing of 2 molecules or therapeutic agents, like protease 3 inhibitors using a random type of synthesis of amino 4 acids or RNA zip codes for amino acids and get 5 something that sticks to those proteins.</p> <p>6 But that's kind of due to the fact that 7 we don't now have the properties whereby we can 8 predict the three dimensional structure of proteins 9 and actually go to the -- or are we starting to the 10 point where we can actually go to the computer 11 monitor and call up these structures and model 12 another protein and how it will interact.</p> <p>13 Q. Is the scientific theory of evolution 14 important to the development of the antibiotics or 15 to doctors' decisions as to when antibiotics should 16 be prescribed?</p> <p>17 A. I think, you know -- well, I address part 18 of that in my expert report in the terms of 19 antibiotic resistance as a paradigm for evolution. 20 I think because there is such a strong fitness cost 21 associated with spontaneous mutations that can bring 22 about antibiotic resistance, that long ago we should 23 have instituted a regimen where you introduce the 24 antibiotics for a given time period on a national 25 and international level and then remove them before</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Page 285</p> <p>1 improvement of organisms or only the degeneration of 2 organisms? I think you will find examples of both. 3 If I can clarify that? Again in my 4 report, there is a hypothesis in biology in 5 evolutionary circles in terms of Muller's ratchet. 6 A mutation has a cost that is associated with it, 7 and it, under given conditions, inhibits the 8 organism's ability to change to differing 9 environmental insults or changes. We can 10 demonstrate that in the lab.</p> <p>11 Q. Let's go to page three, and there you are 12 discussing something, you discuss orally a paper by 13 Lenski. Let me pull out the paper I think you are 14 relying on.</p> <p>15 (Deposition Exhibit No. 21 marked for 16 identification.)</p> <p>17 BY MR. LUCHENITSER:</p> <p>18 Q. Now, we have marked as Exhibit 21 a paper 19 by Lenski, Winkworth, and Riley called: Rates of DNA 20 Sequence Evolution in Experimental Populations of 21 Escherichia coli During 20,000 Generations.</p> <p>22 And in your report you -- well, in your 23 report you characterize the paper as to --</p> <p>24 A. This isn't the same one that I am 25 referencing.</p>

Page 286	Page 288
<p>1 Q. I think you might have had a -- the 2 reference might have been -- so we don't spend time 3 on this, we pulled the paper that cited it here and 4 it didn't seem to be the paper describing these 5 experiments, this seems to be a paper that actually 6 describes the experiments.</p> <p>7 A. I'd have to go back and check that.</p> <p>8 Q. But on page 506 of this paper it says, at 9 the end of the paragraph that carries over from page 10 505, so the first paragraph on 506 there is the 11 conclusion that, "The average population has 12 accumulated fewer than 10 synonymous substitutions 13 in its genome during 20,000 generations."</p> <p>14 And in your report I believe you said, 15 "The admitted results of these experiments are that 16 it is remarkable how little change does occur."</p> <p>17 What is your basis for making the 18 judgment that 10 changes in 20,000 generations is a 19 small amount?</p> <p>20 A. Well, I mean I am extrapolating from our 21 perspective, what is 20,000 generations in human 22 experience? 20,000 times 20 years average 23 generation, 400,000 years. I mean, in terms of the 24 evolution of man over that time period, it is pretty 25 significant.</p>	<p>1 okay, I can have, you know, what, 50,000, 100,000 2 mutations, but that's irrelevant in terms of what 3 you are going to have and what <i>E. coli</i> can tolerate 4 and how many genes are going to, you know, be 5 involved in this process.</p> <p>6 My point is, over 20,000 generations 7 under these conditions, you don't have a lot of 8 change, and my interaction with people that are 9 doing these types of experiments are, I think 10 sometimes over-interpreted.</p> <p>11 Frank Rosenzweig, who was in this 12 department and who is now in Montana, has been doing 13 these experiments -- I don't know if he carried out of 14 Lenski's laboratory or, you know, a laboratory as a 15 post doc doing similar things, where you can put 16 <i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i> under stress conditions 17 where there are low levels of glucose, run it out to 18 20,000 generations and ask what happens. Well, you 19 see an efficiency of the organism to grow on these low 20 concentrations. You get gene amplification for key 21 genes in the pathway that are involved in either the 22 enzymatic breakdown or the transport in.</p> <p>23 But the question remains, all right, add 24 glucose back to point 1 or point 2 percent and what 25 happens to your changes? I would predict that you</p>
Page 287	Page 289
<p>1 Q. How long is bacterial generation?</p> <p>2 A. Twenty minutes.</p> <p>3 Q. So if there is a --</p> <p>4 A. I don't know. I mean, the optimum 5 generation for <i>E. coli</i> <i>Saccharomyces</i> is going to be 6 longer. What are we talking about here? <i>E. coli</i>, 7 okay.</p> <p>8 Q. So if you have 10 substitutions every 20 9 generations couldn't that add up to a huge change 10 over millions of years?</p> <p>11 A. Wait a minute, this is over 20,000 12 generations you have 10 mutations? Clarify what you 13 just said.</p> <p>14 Q. Yes, based on this conclusion, over 15 millions of years couldn't that rate of change add 16 up to very substantial changes in the population of 17 bacteria?</p> <p>18 A. That is speculation in terms of how many 19 mutations can be tolerated in this organism. You 20 know?</p> <p>21 Q. Have you done any analysis independently 22 of what kind of change that rate of -- what kind of 23 changes in the population can be produced by that 24 rate of change over --</p> <p>25 A. Well, you can run out the math and say,</p>	<p>1 are going to recombine them back out if you have any 2 amplified genes. And this is what happens in 3 bacterial systems.</p> <p>4 So we have changing environments. Our 5 experience, when we are doing these experiments in 6 the real world, are examining under natural 7 conditions that you are fluctuating across a mean. 8 You can have selection over a time period, but as 9 environmental conditions change, you go back to a 10 base line. You are always fluctuating around a 11 mean. This is the experience of the Grants in the 12 Galapagos Island study with Darwin finches.</p> <p>13 Again, this is the type of experiment 14 that I think is disingenuous to the argument. You 15 can show antibiotic resistance overnight in 16 bacteria. You can show mutations conferring 17 difference in pigmentation in moss, and then you ask 18 the students, speculate over millions of years these 19 gradual processes are occurring and what will happen 20 to that organism?</p> <p>21 Well, yes, I mean, you can say given that 22 there is no cost to mutations, that I can go from <i>E.</i> 23 <i>coli</i> to a mouse, right? But in actuality, that's 24 extrapolation.</p> <p>25 Q. In your report, primarily on page seven</p>

73 (Pages 286 to 289)

Page 290	Page 292
<p>1 and also starting at the bottom of page six and some 2 other places, you purport the proposition that 3 techniques essential to design engineers and not the 4 theory of evolution have produced the vast inroads 5 we have made in our understanding of the cell.</p> <p>6 A. Right.</p> <p>7 Q. And do I understand correctly that this 8 is -- your claim is based on the experimental 9 processes that molecular biologists use to figure 10 out how cells work where they selectively disable 11 genes?</p> <p>12 A. Right, I mean, this is what Carl Woese's 13 complaint is. We have ignored evolution -- there 14 are scientists that have looked at evolution as 15 being inconsequential or irrelevant to the study of 16 biology. The process that produced this tremendous 17 revolutionary understanding of the cell is a reverse 18 engineering process. That is consistent with the 19 design hypothesis.</p> <p>20 Q. Now, how is intelligent design theory 21 helpful to people who conduct these experiments?</p> <p>22 A. I mean, it is an engineering process, 23 just like going into a shop and looking at a motor, 24 or something, and you are not quite sure how it 25 works. You don't have the blueprints, you start</p>	<p>1 these consortium of molecular machines are working 2 in the cell.</p> <p>3 Q. On page three, at the bottom of page 4 three, The last paragraph, you use the term apparent 5 design?</p> <p>6 A. Right.</p> <p>7 Q. Is that a scientific term?</p> <p>8 A. That's taken from Dawkins' book: The 9 Blind Watchmaker.</p> <p>10 Again, he poses the question, "All 11 biologists agree there is design in nature. Is it 12 real design, the product of intelligence, or is it 13 only apparent design that we can explain by natural 14 law and time, chance, and necessity?"</p> <p>15 So apparent design looks like design but 16 it's not really design, nature can do it in an 17 unintelligent process.</p> <p>18 Q. Does the term apparent design have 19 scientific content or is that something just a lay 20 person can conclude?</p> <p>21 A. No, I think it has scientific content. 22 This is the thing that evolution has to deal with. 23 You know, we all recognize that there is design in 24 nature, and I think the evidence is overwhelming 25 that it is design. It has always been an integral</p>
Page 291	Page 293
<p>1 pulling pieces off and asking how does that affect 2 function, all right?</p> <p>3 Q. But once someone understands this 4 technique, this experimental technique, what does 5 knowing about intelligent design theory add to their 6 abilities as a biologist?</p> <p>7 A. You ask me. Now, Bruce Alberts, in 8 another paper that I submitted as part of my expert 9 report, says that, "Design engineering principles 10 should be incorporated into our college curriculum 11 for biology students." Because we dissect these 12 organisms, we are going to ask the next series of 13 major questions in terms of how these machines 14 interact. That is very, very similar to how a 15 design engineer looks at the interaction and 16 optimization of machines that are all functioning in 17 concert. All right?</p> <p>18 So this is my question that I bring up. 19 If we are going to require design engineering as 20 part of our curriculum, are we going to benefit from 21 that as a discipline? Yet we have ignored the 22 incorporation of evolution. I wasn't required to 23 take it. Very few people that I know of in my field 24 have been required. Design has a lot to offer in 25 terms of understanding biological processes and how</p>	<p>1 part of natural history throughout recorded history 2 until Darwin's theory, and, you know, we are in a 3 unique time period where the materialists' paradigm 4 is dominant.</p> <p>5 But this has been a question going back 6 to the Greeks, you know? Is the eye a product of 7 nature by itself or is there a designer?</p> <p>8 But it is a real question and there are 9 two answers to that question. Why do we exclude one 10 avenue of inquiry? And in my view, recognizing 11 that can have consequence in the progress of 12 science?</p> <p>13 Q. Can you identify something that exhibits 14 apparent design but that you believe was not in fact 15 designed by intelligent causes?</p> <p>16 A. I think there are examples that you can 17 look at. The Mount Rushmore in Vermont, or whatever, 18 that is part of their state symbol. You look at it 19 from the side, it looks like the profile of a face. 20 But you can go up to it and look at it from a 21 different facet and see that it is really -- you 22 know, that image disappears, it's a product of wind 23 and erosion over time.</p> <p>24 Similar things in terms of looking at the 25 surface of Mars right back in the twenties and</p>

74 (Pages 290 to 293)

<p style="text-align: right;">Page 294</p> <p>1 thirties, it looked like there were canals and it 2 was evidence that there was a past civilization or 3 there were aliens living there. But from our 4 perspective we can see that this is also the product 5 of natural law.</p> <p>6 If you look at Mount Rushmore, I think 7 Bill Dembski uses that example, and there is no 8 question because there is specificity. We 9 recognize the profile of Teddy Roosevelt or George 10 Washington or Jefferson from photographs and we can 11 say that's real design.</p> <p>12 All right, the same principles can be 13 involved in application to systems that are under 14 contention.</p> <p>15 (Off the record.)</p> <p>16 MR. LUCHENITSER: Okay, I am going to 17 wrap it up, I don't have the time to go any further.</p> <p>18 (Deposition concluded at 6:00 p.m.)</p> <p>19 (Signature requested.)</p> <p>20</p> <p>21</p> <p>22</p> <p>23</p> <p>24</p> <p>25</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Page 296</p> <p>1 REPORTER'S CERTIFICATE 2 1, NEIL O. COOLEY, Certified Shorthand 3 Reporter, do hereby certify: 4 That the foregoing proceedings were taken 5 before me at the time and place therein set forth, 6 at which time any witnesses were placed under oath; 7 That the testimony and all objections made 8 were recorded stenographically by me and were 9 thereafter transcribed by me or under my direction;</p> <p>10 That the foregoing is a true and correct 11 record of all testimony given, to the best of my 12 ability;</p> <p>13 That I am not a relative or employee of 14 any attorney or of any of the parties, nor am I 15 financially interested in the action.</p> <p>16 IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my 17 hand and seal this 3rd day of June, 2005.</p> <p>18</p> <p>19</p> <hr/> <p>20 NEIL O. COOLEY, C.S.R. # 328 21 Notary Public 22 816 Sherman Ave., Suite 7 23 Coeur d'Alene, Idaho 83814 24 My Commission Expires 02/25/08.</p> <p>25</p>
---	--

Page 295

1 CERTIFICATE OF SCOTT MINNICH, Ph.D.
 2 I, SCOTT MINNICH, Ph.D., being first duly
 3 sworn, depose and say:
 4 That I am the witness named in the foregoing
 5 deposition consisting of pages 1 through 294; that I
 6 have read said deposition and know the contents
 7 thereof; that the questions contained therein were
 8 propounded to me, and that the answers therein
 9 contained are true and correct except for any
 10 changes that I may have listed on the change sheet
 11 attached hereto.

12 Dated this _____ day of _____, 2005;

13

14

15 SCOTT MINNICH, Ph.D.

16 SUBSCRIBED AND SWORN to before me this _____
 17 day of _____, 2005

18

19 NAME OF NOTARY PUBLIC _____

20 NOTARY PUBLIC FOR _____

21 RESIDING AT _____

22 MY COMMISSION EXPIRES _____

23

24

25

75 (Pages 294 to 296)